

# FORD **TF KUGA** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2015

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 20150623031628

# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

About This Manual.....	5
Symbols Glossary.....	5
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	7
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	8

## At a Glance

At a Glance.....	9
------------------	---

## Child Safety

Child Restraints.....	15
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	16
Installing Child Restraints.....	16
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations.....	17
Protecting Larger Children.....	18
Checking Seatbelt Fit.....	19
Child Safety Locks.....	19

## Seatbelts

Principle of Operation.....	20
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	21
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....	22
Seatbelt Reminder.....	22
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance.....	23

## Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation.....	24
Driver Airbag.....	24
Passenger Airbag.....	25
Side Airbags.....	25
Driver Knee Airbag.....	25
Side Curtain Airbags.....	26

## Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	27
Remote Control.....	27
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	29

## Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	30
Manual Liftgate.....	32
Power Liftgate.....	33
Keyless Entry.....	35

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System.....	38
Anti-Theft Alarm.....	38

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	39
Audio Control.....	39
Voice Control.....	41
Cruise Control.....	41
Information Display Control.....	41

## Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	42
Autowipers.....	42
Windshield Washers.....	43
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	43

## Lighting

General Information.....	45
Lighting Control.....	45
Autolamps.....	46
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	46
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	46
Daytime Running Lamps.....	46
Automatic High Beam Control.....	47
Front Fog Lamps.....	48
Rear Fog Lamps.....	49

# Table of Contents

---

Headlamp Leveling.....	49
Cornering Lamps.....	50
Direction Indicators.....	50
Interior Lamps.....	51
Ambient Lighting.....	52

## Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	53
Global Opening and Closing.....	54
Exterior Mirrors.....	55
Interior Mirror.....	58
Sun Visors.....	58
Moonroof.....	58

## Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	60
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	61
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	64

## Information Displays

General Information.....	66
Clock.....	72
Trip Computer.....	72
Personalized Settings.....	72
Information Messages.....	72

## Climate Control

Principle of Operation.....	85
Air Vents.....	85
Manual Climate Control.....	87
Automatic Climate Control.....	88
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....	90
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	93
Auxiliary Heater.....	93

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	98
Head Restraints.....	99

Manual Seats.....	100
Power Seats.....	101
Rear Seats.....	103
Heated Seats.....	104
Rear Seat Armrest.....	104

## Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....	105
-----------------------------	-----

## Storage Compartments

Cup Holders.....	107
Overhead Console.....	107
Folding Tray.....	107

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	108
Ignition Switch.....	108
Keyless Starting.....	108
Steering Wheel Lock.....	110
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	111
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	112
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	112
Switching Off the Engine.....	113

## Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop.....	114
----------------------	-----

## Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	116
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	117
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	117
Running Out of Fuel.....	118
Catalytic Converter.....	119
Refueling.....	119

## Transmission

Manual Transmission.....	122
--------------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

---

Automatic Transmission.....	122
Hill Start Assist.....	125

## Four-Wheel Drive

Principle of Operation.....	127
Using Four-Wheel Drive.....	127

## Brakes

General Information.....	132
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	132
Parking Brake.....	133

## Traction Control

Principle of Operation.....	134
Using Traction Control.....	134

## Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....	135
Using Stability Control.....	135

## Parking Aids

Principle of Operation.....	136
Parking Aid.....	137
Active Park Assist.....	138
Rear View Camera.....	140

## Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....	144
Using Cruise Control.....	144
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	145

## Driving Aids

Speed Limiter.....	150
Driver Alert.....	151
Lane Keeping System.....	152
Blind Spot Information System.....	155
Active City Stop.....	158
Eco Mode.....	159

## Load Carrying

General Information.....	160
Luggage Anchor Points.....	160
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	160
Luggage Covers.....	161
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	162

## Towing

Towing a Trailer.....	163
Trailer Sway Control.....	164
Recommended Towing Weights.....	164
Essential Towing Checks.....	165
Towing Points.....	167
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	167

## Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....	169
Cold Weather Precautions.....	169
Driving Through Water.....	169
Floor Mats.....	169

## Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Warning Flashers.....	171
First Aid Kit.....	171
Warning Triangle.....	171
Fuel Shutoff.....	171
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	172

## Fuses

Fuse Box Locations.....	174
Fuse Specification Chart.....	175
Changing a Fuse.....	184

## Maintenance

General Information.....	185
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	185
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	187
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	188

# Table of Contents

Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™	189
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™	190
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™	190
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel	190
Engine Oil Check	190
Engine Coolant Check	191
Brake Fluid Check	192
Washer Fluid Check	192
Changing the 12V Battery	192
Checking the Wiper Blades	192
Changing the Wiper Blades	193
Removing a Headlamp	193
Changing a Bulb	194
Bulb Specification Chart	200

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior	202
Cleaning the Interior	202
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	203
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels	203

## Wheels and Tires

General Information	204
Tire Care	204
Using Snow Chains	204
Changing a Road Wheel	205
Technical Specifications	212

## Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Identification Plate	213
Vehicle Identification Number	214

## Audio System

General Information	215
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD	216

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio/SYNC	221
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio/Navigation System/SYNC	226
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio/Sony AM/FM/CD	232
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio/Navigation System/SYNC/Sony AM/FM/CD	238
Digital Radio	244
Audio Input Jack	245
USB Port	246
Audio Troubleshooting	247

## Navigation

Navigation	248
------------	-----

## Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	257
End User License Agreement	258

# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

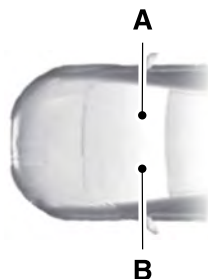
**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so they may appear different to you on your vehicle.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side.  
B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Brake fluid - non petroleum based

# Introduction



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Electronic power steering malfunction



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten seatbelt



Front airbag



Front fog lamps



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard warning flashers



Heated rear window



Heated windshield



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Note operating instructions



# Introduction

---



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Service engine soon



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Windshield wash and wipe

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

# Introduction

---

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

### WARNING

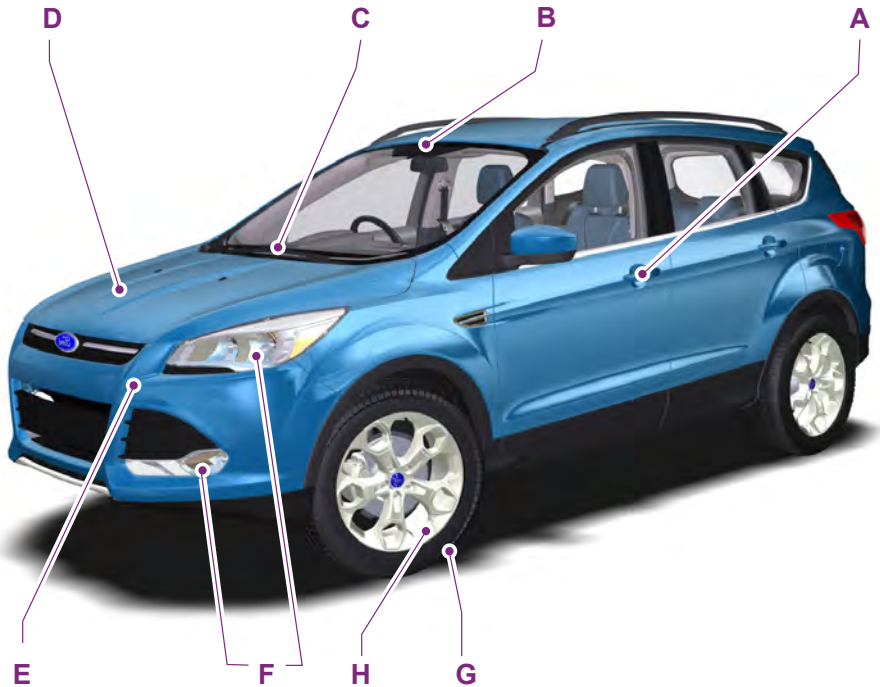


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

# At a Glance

## Front Exterior Overview



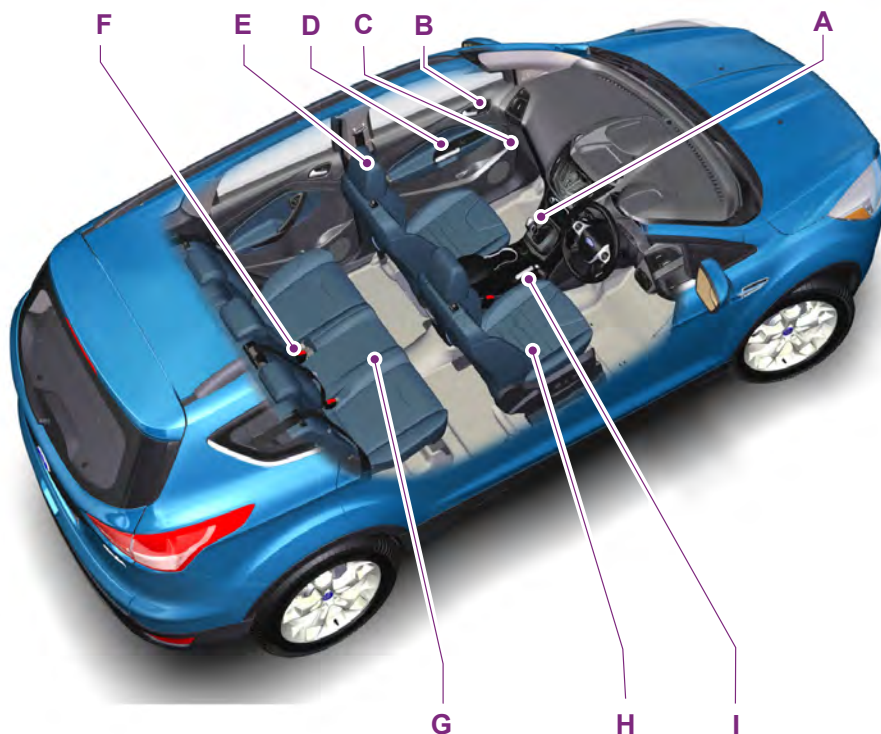
E162996

- A See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 30). See **Keyless Entry** (page 35).
- B See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 47). See **Driver Alert** (page 151). See **Lane Keeping System** (page 152). See **Active City Stop** (page 158).
- C See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 193).
- D See **Maintenance** (page 185).
- E See **Towing Points** (page 167).
- F See **Changing a Bulb** (page 194).

## At a Glance

- G Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 212).
- H See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 205).

### Vehicle Interior Overview



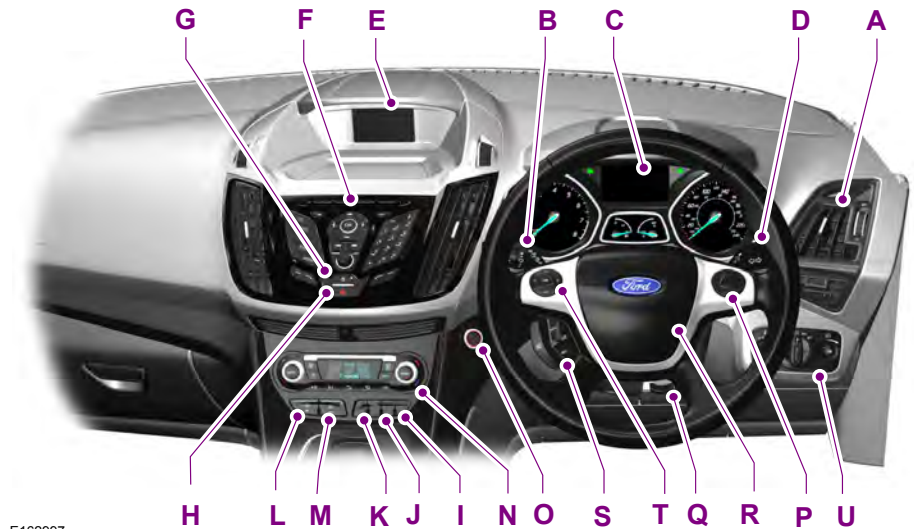
E162998

- A See **Transmission** (page 122).
- B See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 30).
- C See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 185).
- D See **Power Windows** (page 53). See **Exterior Mirrors** (page 55).
- E See **Head Restraints** (page 99).

# At a Glance

- F See **Fastening the Seatbelts** (page 21).
- G See **Rear Seats** (page 103).
- H See **Manual Seats** (page 100). See **Power Seats** (page 101).
- I See **Parking Brake** (page 133).

## Instrument Panel Overview



E162997

- A Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 85).
- B Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 42). or Lane keeping system. See **Lane Keeping System** (page 152). Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 50). High beam. See **Lighting Control** (page 45).
- C Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 60). See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).
- D Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 50). High beam. See **Lighting Control** (page 45). or Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 42).
- E Information and entertainment display.
- F Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 215).

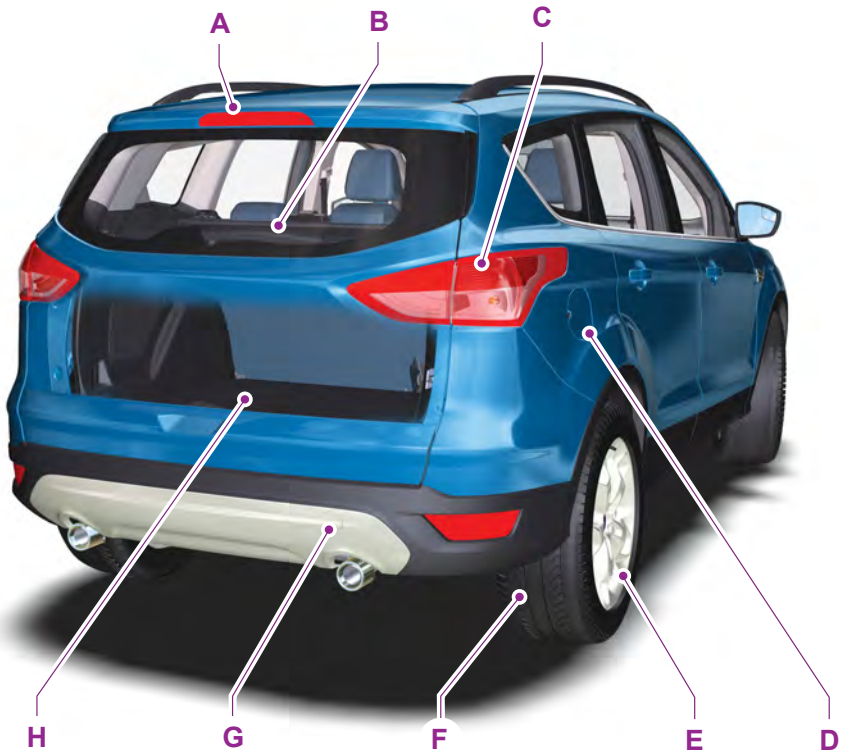
## At a Glance

---

- G Door lock indicator. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 30).
- H Hazard warning flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 171).
- I Parking aid switch. See **Parking Aids** (page 136).
- J Active park assist switch. See **Active Park Assist** (page 138).
- K Start-stop switch. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 114).
- L Heated windshield switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 93).
- M Heated rear window switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 93).
- N Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 85).
- O Start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 108).
- P Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 39). Voice control. See **Voice Control** (page 41). Telephone control.
- Q Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 39).
- R Horn.
- S Cruise control switches. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 144). Adaptive cruise control (ACC) switches. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 145).
- T Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 66).
- U Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 45). Front fog lamps. See **Autolamps** (page 46). Rear fog lamp. See **Rear Fog Lamps** (page 49). Headlamp levelling control. See **Headlamp Leveling** (page 49). Instrument lighting dimmer. See **Principle of Operation** (page 85).

# At a Glance

## Rear Exterior Overview



E152446

- A See **Changing a Bulb** (page 194).
- B See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 193).
- C See **Changing a Bulb** (page 194).
- D See **Refueling** (page 119).
- E See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 205).
- F Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 212).

## At a Glance

---

- G See **Towing Points** (page 167).
- H See **First Aid Kit** (page 171). See **Warning Triangle** (page 171). Spare wheel, jack and wheel brace. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 205). Towing eye. See **Towing Points** (page 167). Fuel funnel. See **Running Out of Fuel** (page 118).



# Child Safety

## CHILD RESTRAINTS

### WARNINGS



Children must always be properly restrained.



This section provides useful information on the installation and safe use of child restraints. Ford strongly recommends that you read and understand this section before carrying children in your vehicle.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the children are seated in suitable child restraints prescribed by the laws of the State or Territory in which the vehicle is operated.

If you are in any doubt about the laws that apply in your location, please consult your local Authorised Ford Dealer or Local Approved Child Restraint Fitting Station for assistance.

### WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

### WARNINGS



Seatbelts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather, they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



Read and follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.



Do not alter or modify child restraints in any way.



Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle.



On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



Destroy the child restraint if it has been in a severe crash, even if no damage is visible.



E212161

# Child Safety

## SELECTING A CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

To provide protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements.

1. **The child restraint system complies with Australian Standard AS1754.** Infants and children must be properly restrained at all times in an approved child restraint which conforms to Australian Standards AS1754 - 2004 or later. Look for the Australian Standard Approval Mark on the child restraint.
2. **The child restraint must be suitable for the size and weight of the child and must be properly fitted and adjusted.** Use the child restraint exactly as shown in the instructions provided with the child restraint. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station.
3. **The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.** Due to variations in the design of child restraint systems, vehicle seats and seatbelts, all child restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child restraint system, it is recommended that the child restraint system is tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child restraint does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will fit.

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

### WARNINGS



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, tip or come away causing death or injury.



Do not use a child restraint if the tether strap falls into a split in the vehicle seat back or falls off the edge of the vehicle seat.

After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the system forward and back and from side to side to verify that it is secured.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. If you have any doubts contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station. Your automobile club or local vehicle registration authority can provide location details of fitting stations.

When installing the child restraint attaching clip to the anchor fitting, raise the head restraint (where fitted) and pass the tether strap between the head restraint supports. This will prevent the tether strap from falling off the outboard edge of the seating positions.

# Child Safety



E166723

**Note:** Side curtain air bags (where fitted) will not interfere with a properly installed child restraint system or booster seat, because they are designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.

When a child restraint system is not being used, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure it is properly secured. An unsecured child restraint system can be thrown around the vehicle in a collision or sudden stop and injure someone.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHORAGE LOCATIONS

### Upper (top tether) anchorages

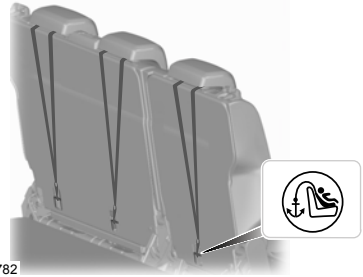
#### WARNING



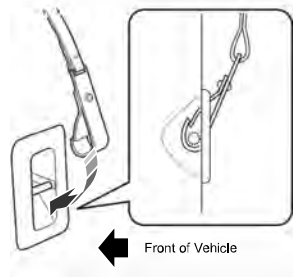
Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

There are three child restraint top tether anchorages, one for each rear seating position.

The top tether anchorages are only suitable for child restraints conforming to Australian Standard AS1754-2004 or later.



E166782



E220530

If your child restraint does not have an approved latched hook attaching clip as shown, you should consult an approved restraint fitting station.

**Note:** You may need to raise or remove the head restraint to ease installation. See *Head Restraints* (page 99).





#### WARNINGS



Always ensure that the attaching clip is properly engaged with the anchor fitting and the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.

# Child Safety


## WARNINGS

-  Always ensure that the locking mechanism of the rear seatback is fully engaged when in the upright position, by attempting to pull it down again.
-  Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.
-  Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.
-  Make sure that the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged in the catch.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 161).

## ISOFIX LOWER ANCHORAGES (If Equipped)

### WARNING

-  The ISOFIX lower anchorages must be used in conjunction with the upper (top tether) anchorages.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX lower anchorages located on the outboard rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.



E87145

## PROTECTING LARGER CHILDREN

The rear seats (where provided) are the safest place for children.

When a child outgrows the recommended weight or height limits for a forward facing child restraint system, the child should sit on a booster seat and wear a lap-sash seatbelt. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips. A booster seat should be used until the child is tall enough for the lap-sash seatbelt to fit properly.



# Child Safety

## Typical Booster Seat



E70710





### WARNINGS

-  Do not install a booster seat with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.
-  Do not install a booster seat with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

## CHECKING SEATBELT FIT

If the lap-sash seatbelt touches or crosses the child's neck, then the child needs a booster seat.

### WARNINGS

-  Never wear a seatbelt across the neck. This could result in serious neck injury in the event of a collision.
-  Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.
-  Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.
-  Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

### Manual Child Safety Locks

#### WARNING



You cannot open the doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



E112197

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

**Note:** On vehicles with keyless entry, use the spare key. See **Keyless Entry** (page 35).

#### Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

#### Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

# Seatbelts

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The wearing of a seatbelt is a mandatory requirement. Seatbelts should be properly fastened and adjusted before the vehicle is driven. Adjust the driver's seat position before fastening the seatbelt.



Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.



Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt properly, can it hold you in position to achieve its optimum effect.

See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 98).

### WARNINGS



Never use a seatbelt for more than one person. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.



Use the correct buckle for each seatbelt.



Do not use a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.



Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

### WARNINGS



Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.



No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.



Seatbelts are designed to be used by adult sized occupants.

The driver and front passenger seatbelt systems are fitted with a seatbelt pretensioner. Seatbelt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the seatbelt pretensioners will deploy.

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a side curtain airbag is deployed.

### Status after a collision

### WARNINGS



Seatbelts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.



If a seatbelt pretensioner has been deployed, the seatbelt must be renewed.

# Seatbelts

## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

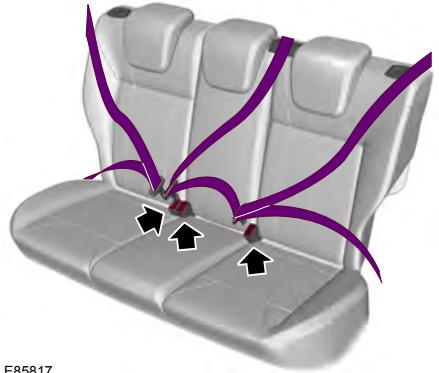
### WARNINGS



Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seatbelt correctly if you do not hear a click.



Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stored away when not in use and are not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



E85817

Pull the seatbelt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

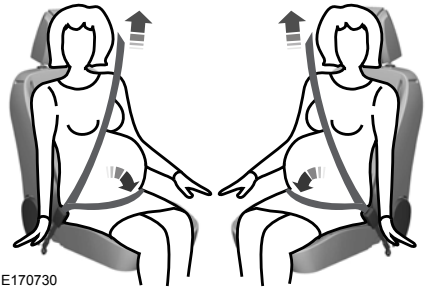
The rear outer seatbelts can lock if you return the seat backrest from a folded position to the upright position forcefully. Should the seatbelt lock, feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.



E74124

## Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy



E170730

# Seatbelts

## WARNING



Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

### WARNING



Position the seatbelt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E219555

To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### WARNINGS



The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.



If multiple seatbelts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one audible chime will sound.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front seatbelts have not been fastened, and
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate and sound if a front seatbelt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your seatbelt the warning switches off automatically after approximately five minutes.

## Rear Seatbelt Reminder

**Note:** Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to confirm the message.

The following status updates will be shown in the display:

- Tick symbol: Fastened seatbelt.
- Exclamation mark: A seatbelt that has been unfastened when your vehicle is moving. You will also hear an audible chime.



# Seatbelts

---

## Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off

See an authorized dealer.

## CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle seatbelts periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle seatbelts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle seatbelt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front seatbelt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), should be inspected after a crash.


Ford Motor Company recommends that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.


Properly care for seatbelts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 202).


# Supplementary Restraints System


## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION


### WARNINGS


 Do not fit a non-Ford approved bull bar to your vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the restraint system, including the air bag deployment, and could result in injury to yourself and others. Fitment of a bull bar may also void the vehicle's compliance with Australian Design Rules.

 Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.


 Do not fit any accessories on the front of the vehicle within 150 mm of the centre line of the vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the front crash sensor.


 Normal air flow to the radiator must not be affected when fog lamps, driving lamps or similar equipment is fitted to the vehicle. Serious mechanical damage will occur.


 Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

### WARNINGS

 Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death.

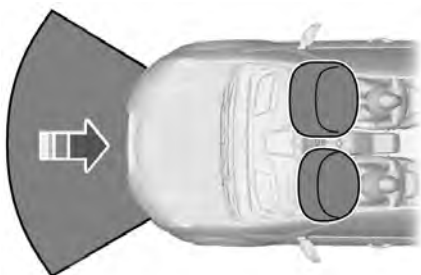
 Do not puncture the seat with sharp objects. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

**Note:** Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

## DRIVER AIRBAG

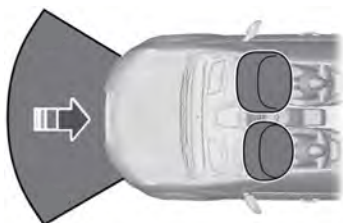


E74302

# Supplementary Restraints System

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

## PASSENGER AIRBAG



E151127

The passenger airbag will deploy during significant frontal or near-frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the front passenger airbag will not deploy.

## SIDE AIRBAGS

### WARNING



Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.



E72658

The airbags are located inside the seatback of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seatback to indicate this.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It might also deploy during significant frontal collisions. The airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

## DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

### WARNING



Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

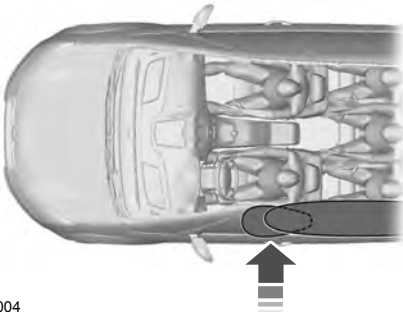
For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

# Supplementary Restraints System

---

**Note:** The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.

## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



E75004

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It will also deploy during significant frontal angled collisions. The curtain airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

**Note:** *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m.

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

**Note:** *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

**Note:** *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

## REMOTE CONTROL

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

**Note:** *When you press the unlock button either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver's door and the liftgate are unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

### Changing the Remote Control Battery



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.

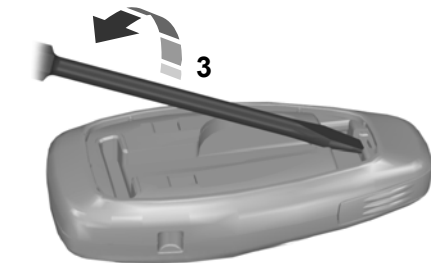
# Keys and Remote Controls

## Remote Control without a Folding Key Blade



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.



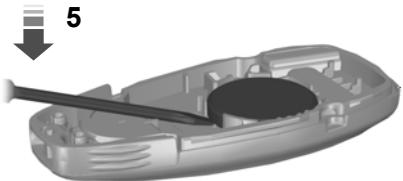
E105362

3. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to start separating the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

5. Carefully prise out the battery with the screwdriver.
6. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing downwards.
7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Install the key blade.

# Keys and Remote Controls

---

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

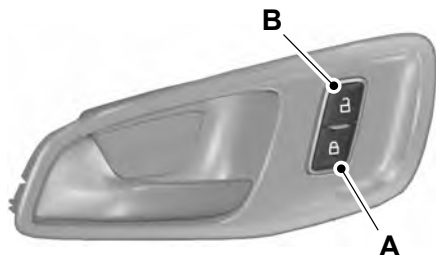
Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 38).

# Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

### Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is located on the driver's and front passenger's door.



E148829

- A Lock
- B Unlock

### Remote Control

You can use the remote control from outside your vehicle when your vehicle is not running.

### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock the driver's door. The direction indicators will flash once.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash once.

**Note:** You can unlock the driver's door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** When you lock your vehicle for several weeks, the remote control will be switched off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once will enable the remote control.

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function in keyless vehicles

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver's door is unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 27).

### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all the doors. The direction indicators will illuminate.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, and the direction indicators will flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

**Note:** If any door or the luggage compartment is not closed, or if the hood is not closed on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the direction indicators will not flash.

### Double Locking

#### WARNING



Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. You will not be able to unlock the doors from the inside if you have double locked them.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if they are all closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds.

### Automatic Relocking

The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.



# Locks

## Power Liftgate

### WARNINGS



Make sure all passengers are clear of the liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



Close the liftgate properly to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. This will prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents open so outside air can enter your vehicle.



Press twice within three seconds to open or close the liftgate, or to reverse the movement. See

**Power Liftgate** (page 33).

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors from Inside

Use the lock and unlock buttons located on the driver's and front passenger's door.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key

**Note:** Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.

### Locking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

### Double Locking with the Key

Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.

### Unlocking

Unlock the driver's door using the key. You can unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

**Note:** If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you will only turn off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.

**Note:** If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

## Locking the Doors Individually with the Key

**Note:** When the central locking function fails to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.



E112203

### Left-hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

### Right-hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

# Locks

## MANUAL LIFTGATE

### WARNINGS



It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seatbelt properly. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

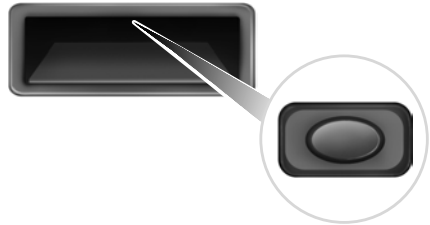
**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## Opening the Liftgate

### Manually



E138632

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

### With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

## Closing the Liftgate



E155976

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

# Locks

## POWER LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Do not operate the liftgate unless it is free from obstruction.



Careless opening and closing of the liftgate can override the protection function and cause injuries.



Do not place objects on the liftgate.



Make sure you fully close the liftgate after operation.



Operate the liftgate only when your vehicle is stationary.

You can operate the liftgate using the remote control, the center console switch, the liftgate switch, the liftgate release handle or the hands-free feature.

**Note:** Make sure there is enough headroom to open the liftgate.

**Note:** If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, make sure the transmission selector lever is in park.

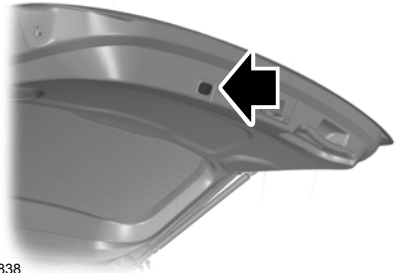
**Note:** In extreme weather conditions, automatic opening and closing will not work with the liftgate frozen to the seal.

**Note:** The liftgate will stop automatically while opening and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

**Note:** The liftgate will stop automatically while closing and fully open if there is an obstacle in the way.

**Note:** You can manually operate the liftgate.

## Liftgate switch



E129838



Centre Console Switch.

You will hear three chimes when the liftgate begins to close.

Five short chimes indicate a malfunction with the open or close request. This could be caused by one of the following:

- You switch the ignition on and the transmission selector lever is not in park.
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- Your vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h).

To open a fully closed liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.
- Use the hands-free feature.

To fully open a partially opened liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.

# Locks

- Use the liftgate release handle.
- Use the hands-free feature.

To stop the liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control. A further remote control operation will be delayed for approximately three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.
- Use the hands-free feature.

## Closing the Liftgate

### WARNING



The bounce-back feature will not work and it will not detect obstacles when the liftgate is in contact with the vehicle body.

**Note:** Do not leave a passive key in your vehicle when closing the liftgate. A message will be shown in the display. See **Information Messages** (page 72).

**Note:** A recessed grip is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

You can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.
- Use the hands-free feature.
- Manually close the liftgate



E130232

The liftgate will close automatically when it comes into contact with the vehicle body.

## Programming the Liftgate

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Manually move the liftgate to the new required position.
3. Press and hold the liftgate switch for at least three seconds. You will hear a chime.

## Hands-Free Feature

**Note:** This feature will not function if your vehicle is fitted with a towbar.

**Note:** Make sure you have a remote control within 3 feet (1 meter) of the liftgate.

1. Move your foot under and away from the rear bumper similar to a kicking motion.

# Locks



E161602

2. The liftgate will power open or close.

**Note:** Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may enable the bounce-back feature and stop the liftgate from opening or closing.

**Note:** Splashing water may cause the liftgate to open. Keep the remote control away from the rear bumper detection area when washing your vehicle.

## KEYLESS ENTRY (If Equipped)

### General information

#### WARNING



The keyless entry system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as mobile phones.

The passive entry system will not function if:

- The vehicle battery is flat.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

**Note:** If the passive entry system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

The keyless system allows the driver to operate the vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately one and a half meters from the driver and front passenger door handles and the luggage compartment lid.

### Passive key

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked with the passive key. The passive key can also be used as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 30).

### Locking the vehicle

#### WARNING

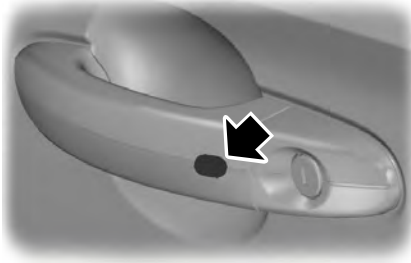


The vehicle does not lock itself automatically. If the locking function is not activated, the vehicle will remain unlocked.

# Locks

**Note:** The ignition will automatically switch off when you lock your vehicle from the outside. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

**Note:** Do not grab the door handle while you touch the lock sensor.



E144112

Touch a front door handle lock sensor to lock the vehicle.

To activate central locking and arm the alarm:

- Touch a front door handle lock sensor once.

To activate double locking and arm the alarm:

- Touch a front door handle lock sensor twice within three seconds.

**Note:** There must be clearance between each touch of the door handle.

**Note:** Once activated, the vehicle will remain locked for approximately three seconds. When the delay period is over, the doors can be opened again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

## Luggage compartment lid

**Note:** The luggage compartment lid cannot be closed and, will pop back up if the passive key is located inside the vehicle with the doors locked.

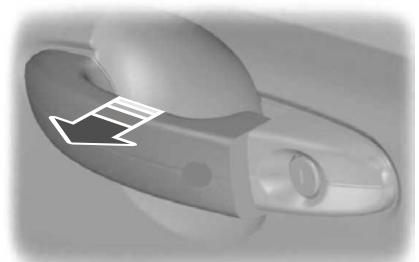
**Note:** If a second valid passive key is located within the rear exterior detection range, the luggage compartment lid can be closed.

## Unlocking the vehicle

**Note:** If the vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the keyless system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to reduce the discharge of the vehicle battery. When the vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. Unlocking the vehicle once will deactivate the energy-saving mode.

**Note:** If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the keyless system will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked using the key blade. Unlocking the vehicle once will enable the keyless system.

**Note:** Do not touch the front door handle lock sensor when opening a door.



E144113

Open any door.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

# Locks

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

## Unlocking only the driver's door

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver's door and the luggage compartment lid are unlocked ( See **Remote Control** (page 27). ), note the following:

If the driver's door is the first door which is opened, the other doors will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside the vehicle by pressing the unlock button on the instrument panel. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9). Doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

## Disabled keys

Any keys left inside the vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

A disabled key cannot be used to turn the ignition on or start the engine.

In order to use these passive keys again, they have to be enabled.

To enable all your passive keys, unlock the vehicle using a passive key or the remote control unlocking function.

All passive keys will then be enabled if the ignition is turned on or the vehicle is started using a valid key.

## Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade



E87964

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade and insert it into the lock.

**Note:** Only the driver's door handle is fitted with a lock cylinder.

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

### Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can purchase a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

### Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

### Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM (If Equipped)

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key, remote control or keyless entry keypad.

The direction indicators will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in the ignition. Electronically lock the vehicle to arm the alarm.



The message indicator flashes when theft protection is active.

### Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad.
- Switch the ignition on or start the vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver's door to unlock the vehicle, then switch the ignition on within 12 seconds.

**Note:** *Pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.*



# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

### WARNING



Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 98).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

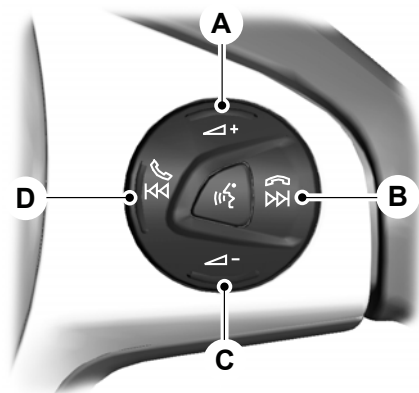
## AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:

# Steering Wheel

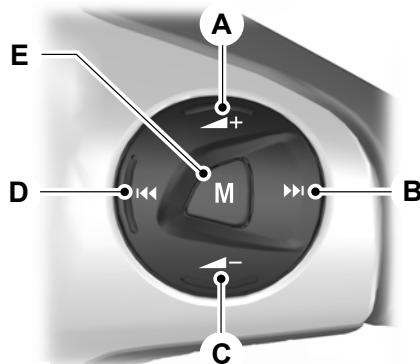
## Type 1



E159789

- A Volume up
- B Seek up, next or end call
- C Volume down
- D Seek down, previous or accept call

## Type 2



E129462

- A Volume up
- B Seek up or next
- C Volume down
- D Seek down or previous
- E Mode

Press **M** to select the audio source.

### Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
- play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
- seek through a track.

# Steering Wheel

## VOICE CONTROL



E159531

Press the button to select or deselect voice control.

## INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E130248

See **Information Displays** (page 66).

## CRUISE CONTROL



E157482

See **Cruise Control** (page 144).



E145434

Use the arrows on the right side of the steering wheel to navigate through the information display menus. Press **OK** to make a selection.

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS

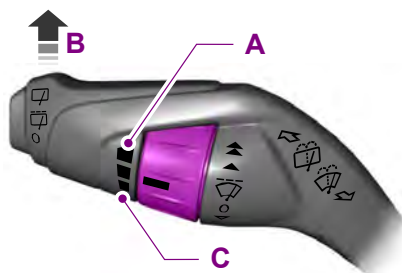
**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

**Note:** Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

**Note:** The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.



E166227

- A Short wipe interval
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Long wipe interval

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

### Speed dependent wipers (if equipped)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes will decrease.

### AUTOWIPERS (If Equipped)

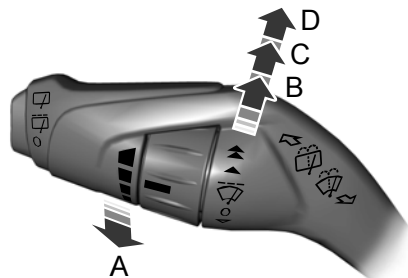
**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

**Note:** Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, the low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.

**Note:** Wet road conditions can cause unexpected wiping or smearing.



E166226

- A Single wipe
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Normal wipe
- D High speed wipe

### Intermittent Wipe

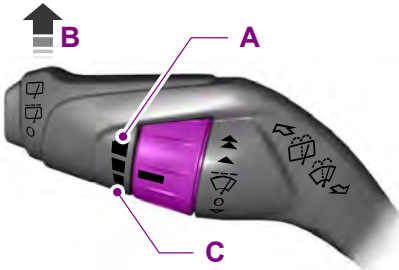
**Note:** The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.

# Wipers and Washers

**Note:** The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.

To reduce smearing we recommend the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers.
- Switch to normal or high speed wipe.
- Switch the autowipers off.



E166227

- A High sensitivity
- B On
- C Low sensitivity

The wipers will function when moisture is detected on the windshield. The rain sensor will continue to monitor the amount of moisture on the windshield and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. With low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a large amount of moisture on the windshield. With high sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a small amount of moisture on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. Sensor performance will be affected if the area around the interior mirror is dirty. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or flies hit the windshield.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

**Note:** The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.



E166256

The washers will spray for as long as you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever, the wipers will operate for a short time.

A wipe will occur a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid.

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

### Rear Window Wiper

**Note:** The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.

# Wipers and Washers



E166230

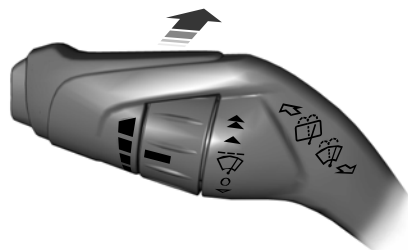
- A Intermittent wipe
- B Low speed wipe

Press the button at the end of the lever to change between off, intermittent and low speed.

When you shift into R (Reverse), the rear wiper will switch on to intermittent if the front wipers are activated.

## Rear Window Washer

**Note:** The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.



E166231

The washer will spray for as long as you push the lever away from you. When you release the lever, the wiper will operate for a short time.

# Lighting

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

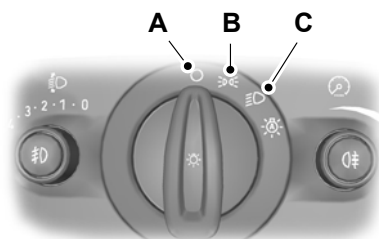
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL



E165741

- A Off
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
- C Headlamps

### High Beams

**Note:** The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.



E166216

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

# Lighting

## Headlamp Flasher

**Note:** The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.



Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

## AUTOLAMPS



E70719

The headlamps will turn on and off automatically in low light situations or during inclement weather.

**Note:** It may be necessary to switch your headlamps on manually in severe weather conditions.

The headlamps will remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. You can adjust the time delay using the information display controls. See

**Information Displays** (page 66).

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

**Note:** If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.



Turn the switch clockwise or anticlockwise until the desired level is reached.

## HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

### WARNING



Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.



## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. A manual override may be necessary if the system fails to switch the high beam on or off.



A manual override may be required when approaching other road users such as cyclists.



Do not use the system in fog.



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. A manual override may be necessary in these cases.



The system may not deactivate the high beam if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles (for example guard rails).



Check and replace wiper blades regularly to ensure the camera sensor has a clear view through the windscreen. Replacement wiper blades must be the correct length.

**Note:** Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** Reflective road signs may be detected as oncoming traffic and the headlamps will be switched to low beam.

**Note:** Always fit Ford Original Parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

The system will automatically switch on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead the system will switch off high beam before it can distract other road users. Low beam will remain on.

A camera sensor is centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle. This monitors conditions continuously to decide when to switch the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active the high beam will switch on if:

- It is dark enough to require the use of high beams and
- there is no traffic or street lighting ahead and
- vehicle speed is greater than 25 mph (40 km/h).

The high beam will switch off if:

- The ambient light is high enough that high beam is not required.
- An approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps are detected.
- Street lighting is detected.
- Vehicle speed falls below 16 mph (25 km/h).
- The camera sensor is too hot or becomes blocked.

### Switching the System On

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

# Lighting



E70719

Turn the switch to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 46).



The indicator will illuminate to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

**Note:** The indicator will only illuminate when it is dark and headlamps have been switched on.

**Note:** The system may take a short time to initialize after first switching the ignition on, especially in very dark conditions. The high beam will not automatically switch on during this time.

## Setting the System Sensitivity

The system has three sensitivity levels which can be accessed via the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

The set level determines the speed at which the high beam will be restored after detected traffic leaves the field of view.

## Manually Overriding the System

**Note:** The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.



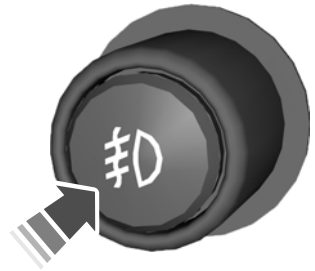
E166222

Push or pull the lever to switch between high and low beam.

**Note:** This is a temporary override and the system will return to automatic operation after a short period.

To permanently switch the system off, use the information display menu or turn the lighting control switch to the headlamps position.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS



E70721

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

# Lighting

## REAR FOG LAMPS



E70720

### WARNINGS



Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is restricted to less than 164 feet (50 meters).



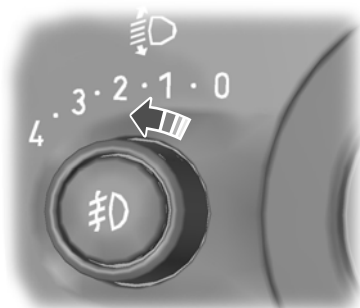
Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 164 feet (50 meters).

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING

**Note:** Vehicles with Xenon headlamps have automatic headlamp leveling.



E165823

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to your vehicle load.

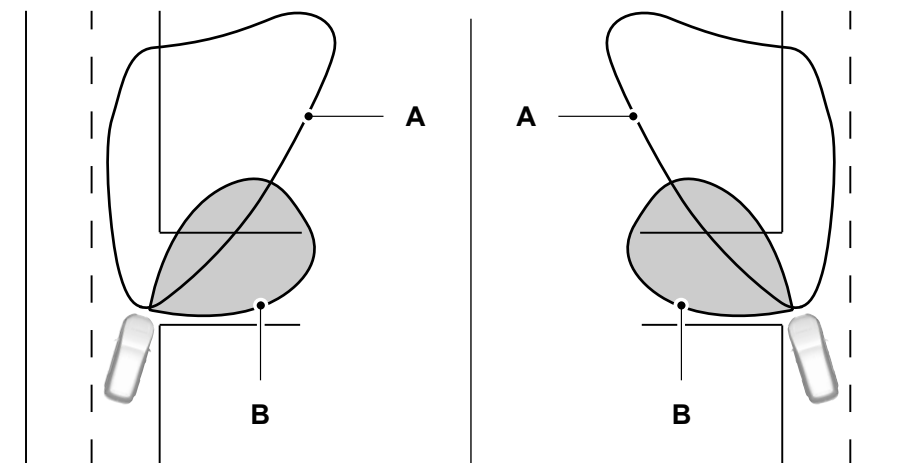
## Recommended Headlamp Leveling Switch Positions

Load		Load in luggage compartment*	Switch position
Front seats	Second row seats		
1-2	-	-	0
1-2	3	-	2
1-2	3	Max	2.5
1	-	Max	4

\* See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 213).

# Lighting

## CORNERING LAMPS (If Equipped)



E72898

- A Headlamp beam
- B Cornering lamp beam

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS

**Note:** The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.



E166224

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

# Lighting

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

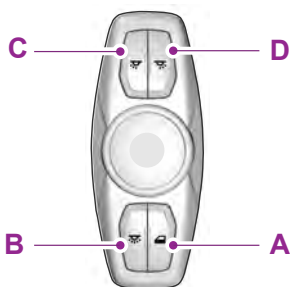
## INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps will switch on when one of the following conditions have been met:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press switch B on the front interior lamp.

### Front Interior Lamp

#### Without moonroof



E161163



(A) Door function switch. Press this switch to disable the interior lamps. The door function indicator lamp will illuminate yellow with lamps disabled. Press the switch again to turn interior lamps back on. The indicator lamp will illuminate blue.



(B) All lamps on and off switch.

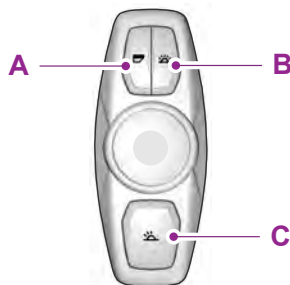


(C) Passenger individual lamp on and off switch.



(D) Driver individual lamp on and off switch.

#### With moonroof



E142454



(A) Door function switch. Press this switch to disable the interior lamps. The door function indicator lamp will illuminate yellow with lamps disabled. Press the switch again to turn interior lamps back on. The indicator lamp will illuminate blue.



(B) All lamps on and off switch.



(C) Individual lamp on and off switch.

### Rear Interior Lamp (If Equipped)

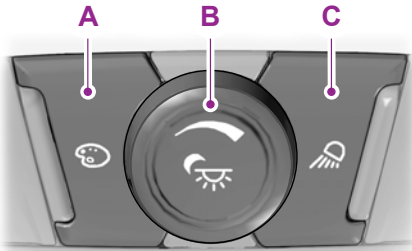


E142455

(A) You can switch individual map lamps on independently by pressing switch.

## AMBIENT LIGHTING (If Equipped)

The ambient lighting system illuminates the interior with a choice of several colors. The ambient lighting control is located in the overhead console.



E142456

- A Color palette
- B Control knob
- C Search mode

Rotate B past the first detent to switch on and adjust to the desired brightness.

Press A to cycle through the color choices.

Press C to switch on all interior lamps and the ambient lighting. Press C again to switch off the interior lamps and return the ambient lighting to the previously selected color.

The ambient lighting will switch on when the following conditions have been met:

- you switch the ignition on
- you switch the headlamps on

The ambient lighting will remain on until you switch the ignition off and one of the following conditions have been met:

- you lock your vehicle
- the accessory delay timer expires.

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

### WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E70848

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

**Note:** You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

### One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the control fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

### Window Lock



E70850

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It lights when the rear window controls lock.

### Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window stops automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

### Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

#### WARNING



When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

# Windows and Mirrors

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. You disabled the bounce-back feature and you can now close the window manually. The window travels past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

## Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

### WARNING



The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the control.
3. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
4. Release the control.
5. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
6. Release the control.
7. Press and hold the control until the window is fully open.
8. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
9. Release the control.
10. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
11. Repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

## Accessory Delay (If Equipped)

You can use the window controls for several minutes after switching off the ignition or until opening either front door.

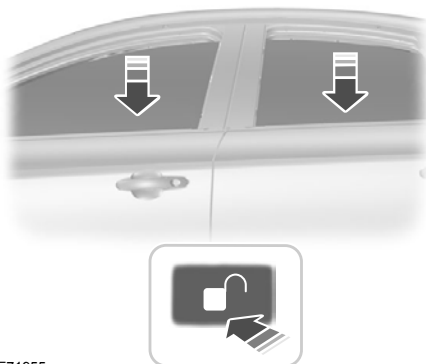
## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can also operate the power windows with the ignition off using the global opening and global closing function.

**Note:** *Global opening will only operate for a short period of time after you have unlocked your vehicle using the remote control.*

**Note:** *Global closing will only operate if you have set the memory correctly for each window. See **Power Windows** (page 53).*

## Global Opening (If Equipped)



E71955

To open all the windows:

1. Press and release the remote control unlock button.
2. Press and hold the remote control unlock button for at least three seconds.



# Windows and Mirrors

Press the lock or unlock button to stop the opening function.

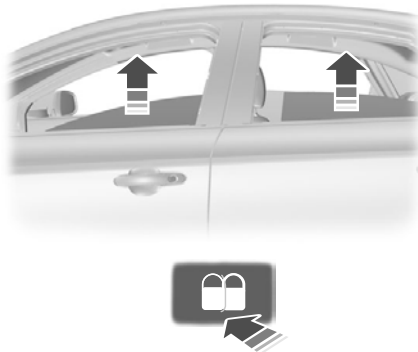
## Global Closing (If Equipped)

### Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

#### WARNING



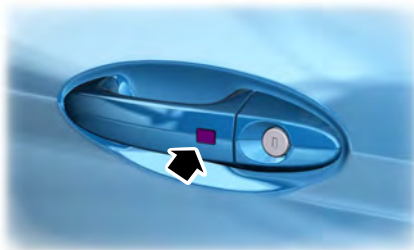
Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, press the lock or unlock button immediately to stop.



E71956

To close all the windows, press and hold the remote control lock button for at least three seconds. Press the lock or unlock button to stop the closing function. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

### Vehicles With Keyless Entry



E87384

#### WARNING



Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, touch a door handle lock sensor to stop.

**Note:** Global closing can be switched on using the driver's door handle. Global opening and closing can also be switched on using the buttons on the passive key.

To close all the windows, press and hold the driver's door handle for at least three seconds. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

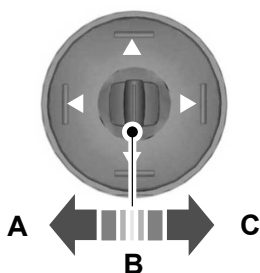
### Power Exterior Mirrors

#### WARNING



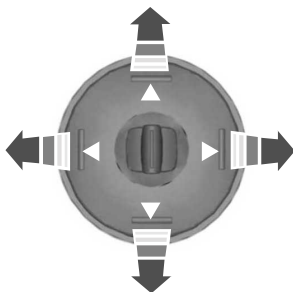
Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.

# Windows and Mirrors



E70846

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Off
- C Right-hand mirror



E70847

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

## Automatic Folding and Unfolding

The mirrors will fold automatically when you lock your vehicle with the key, the remote control or a keyless entry system request. The mirrors will unfold when you unlock your vehicle with the key, the remote control, a keyless entry system request or the driver side interior door handle.

**Note:** If you fold the mirrors using the manual fold button, you can only unfold them again manually.

## Manual Folding and Unfolding

The electric folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** They will no longer operate if you switch the ignition off and open a door.



E72623

Press the button to fold or unfold the mirrors.

Press the button again to stop and reverse the direction of movement.

**Note:** Continuous folding and unfolding of the mirrors will cause them to overheat and shut down for a short time. This is to avoid permanent damage.

## Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

## Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 93).

# Windows and Mirrors

## Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)

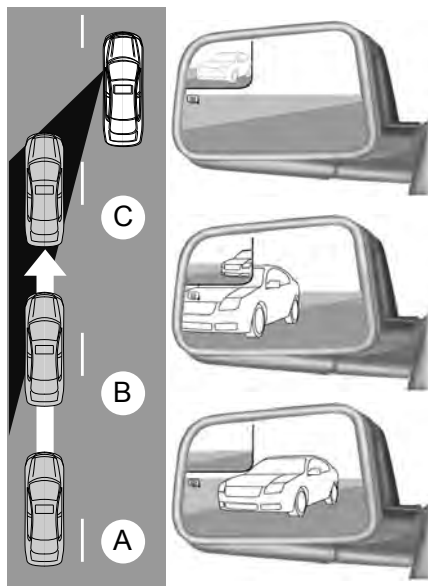
### WARNING



Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They are designed to increase your visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you intend to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

## Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Eco Mode** (page 159).

# Windows and Mirrors

## INTERIOR MIRROR

### WARNING



Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

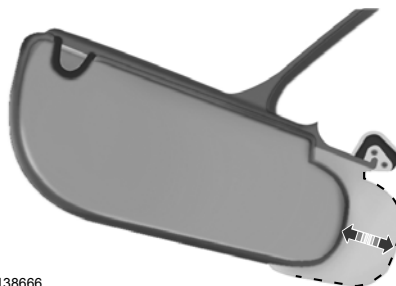
Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

### Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

**Note:** Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

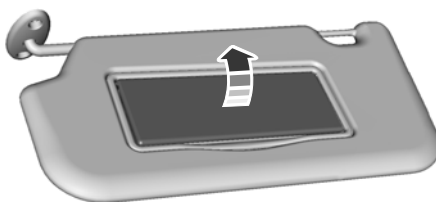
## SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

### Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

## MOONROOF (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

# Windows and Mirrors

## WARNINGS



When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof and sunscreen controls are located on the overhead console.

The moonroof and sunscreen have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop them during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

## Opening and Closing the Sunscreen

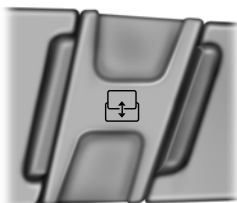


E138668

Press and release the rear of the control to open the sunscreen.

Press and release the front of the control to close the sunscreen. If it is open, the moonroof will automatically close before the sunscreen closes.

## Opening and Closing the Moonroof



E138669

Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof. If it is closed, the sunscreen will automatically open before the moonroof opens. The moonroof will stop short of the fully opened position.

**Note:** *This position helps to reduce wind noise or rumbling which may happen with the moonroof fully open. Press and hold the control again to fully open the moonroof.*

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

## Bounce-Back

The moonroof will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Press and hold the front of the control within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function. While bounce-back is active, the closing force increases for each of the next three times that you close the moonroof.

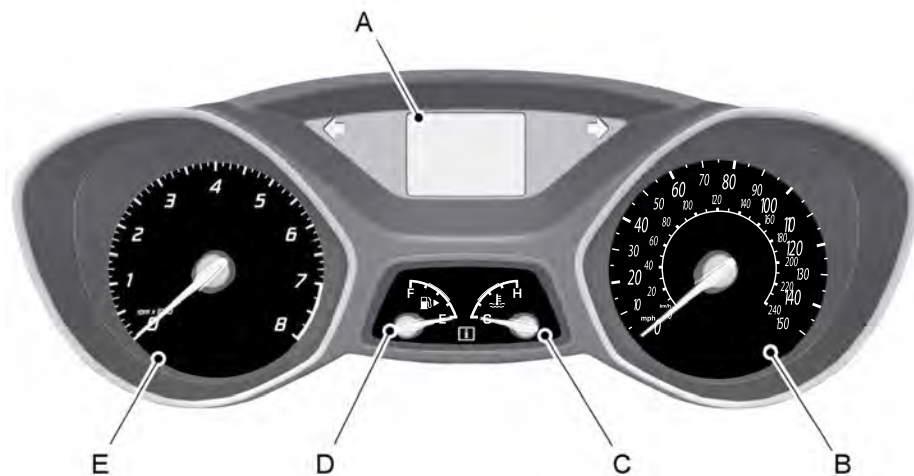
## Venting the Moonroof

Press and release the front of the control to vent the moonroof. Press and release the rear of the control to close the moonroof.

**Note:** *When you vent the moonroof it will rise to 4 cm and then lower slightly. This is normal. You cannot stop the moonroof in the higher position.*

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES



E145825

- A Information display
- B Speedometer
- C Engine coolant temperature gauge
- D Fuel gauge
- E Tachometer

### Information Display

#### Compass (If Equipped)

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

### Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display, it registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

### Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

# Instrument Cluster

## Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 72).

## Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See (page 66).

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

### WARNING



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the center section.

**Note:** Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 191).

## Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

A low fuel reminder will be triggered when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th or vehicles equipped with a DTE (Drive To Empty) is at 35 miles (60km), whichever occurs first.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.

### Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

### Automatic High Beam Lamp (if

Equipped)



It will illuminate when this feature is on. See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 47).

### Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

# Instrument Cluster

## Blind Spot Monitor Indicator (If

Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot**

**Information System** (page 155). See **Information Messages** (page 72).

## Brake System Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

### WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

## Cruise Control Indicator (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page

145).

## Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burnt out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 194).

## Engine Oil Warning Lamp

### WARNING



Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 190).

## Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp



Powertrain Warning Lamp

## All Vehicles

If either lamp illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. The engine will continue to run but it may have limited power. If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.



# Instrument Cluster

## WARNING



Have this checked immediately.

If both lamps illuminate together, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so (continued use may cause reduced power and cause the engine to stop). Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. If the engine restarts have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. When the engine does not restart have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 22).

## Front Airbag Warning Lamp



If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## Frost warning lamp

### WARNING



Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It will illuminate when the outside air temperature is 4°C or below.

## Glow Plug Indicator



See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 112).

## High Beam Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

## Information Indicator



It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. It will be red or amber in color depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified. See **Information Messages** (page 72).

## Lane Keeping System Indicator



It will illuminate when this feature is switched off or in conjunction with a message. See **Lane Keeping System** (page 152).

## Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates, refuel as soon as possible.

## Headlamp and Parking Lamp Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the headlamps or parking lamps on.

## Rear Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

# Instrument Cluster

## Shift Indicator



It will illuminate to inform you that shifting to a higher or lower gear as indicated may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.



## Stability Control Off Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

## Stability Control Warning Lamp



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

## Start-Stop Indicator



It will illuminate to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message.

See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 114). See **Information Messages** (page 72).

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Door Ajar

Sounds if the vehicle's speed exceeds the pre-determined limit and any of the doors are open or ajar. The chime will only sound once.

## Engine On Warning Chime

A warning chime will sound when any door is opened if the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

## Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit the vehicle and the keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating the vehicle is still on.

## Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you switch the ignition off and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

## Headlight Exit Delay

Sounds when the headlight exit delay has been activated.

## Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

## Seatbelt Minder

### WARNINGS



The seatbelt minder remains in stand-by mode when the front seatbelts have been fastened. It will be reactivated if either seatbelt is unfastened.



Do not sit on top of a fastened seatbelt to prevent the seatbelt minder from coming on. The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the seatbelt properly.

# Instrument Cluster

---

Sounds when the vehicle's speed exceeds the pre-determined limit, and the driver or front passenger (if equipped) seatbelts are unfastened. The chime will stop after approximately five minutes.

## **Automatic Transmission Warning Chime**

Sounds when you have not moved the transmission selector lever to position **P**. A message will be shown in the display.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel. The information display will show the corresponding information.

## Information Display Controls



E138659

- Press the up or down arrow button to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a submenu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

### Menu Structure - Information Display

You can access the menu using the information display control.

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

# Information Displays

## Trip computer<sup>1</sup>

Message
Trip odometer
Speed
Dist to empty
Instant fuel
Average fuel
Average speed

<sup>1</sup> See **Trip Computer** (page 72). See **Gauges** (page 60).

## Information

Message
Seatbelts
Driver alert
Traffic signs
Intelligent AWD

## Settings

Message		Action
Driver assist	Traction ctrl	On or Off
	BLIS	On or Off
	City Stop	On or Off
	Forward alert	Sensitivity
	Driver alert	On or Off
	Hill start assist	On or Off
	Deflate detect	
	Traffic signs	On or Off
		Speed warning

## Information Displays

Message			Action
	Lane keeping		Reset
			Sensitivity
			Intensity
Lighting	Rain light		On or Off
	Dimming		Manual or Auto
	Auto highbeam		On or Off
			Sensitivity
	Hdlamp delay		Manual or xx Seconds
Display	Navigation info		Choose your applicable setting
	Language		Choose your applicable setting
	Measure unit		Choose your applicable setting
	Temp unit		Choose your applicable setting
Chimes	Park slot found		On or Off
	Information		On or Off
	Warning		On or Off
Convenience	Alarm		Choose your applicable setting
	Compass		On or Off
	Aux heater	Park heater	On or Off
			Time 1
			Time 2
			Once
			Heat now

# Information Displays

## System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Press the up or down arrow button to scroll through the list.

## Menu Structure - Information and Entertainment Display

You can access the menu using the information and entertainment display control. See **At a Glance** (page 9).

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

SYNC-Media allows you to access the SYNC features.

## Phone

Message	
Dial a number	
Redial	
Phonebook	
Call history	Incoming calls
	Outgoing calls
	Missed calls
Speed Dial	
Text messaging	
BT Devices	
Phone settings	Set as master
	Phonebook pref.
	Set ringtone
	Phone status
	Text msg notify
Emerg. Assist.	

# Information Displays

## Menu

Message		Action
SYNC-Settings	Bluetooth on	
	BT Devices	
	Set defaults	
	Master reset	
	Install on SYNC	
	System info	
	Voice settings	Choose your applicable setting
	Browse USB	
SYNC-Applications		
Navigation	Route options	Route
		Driver:
		Eco settings
		Dynamic
		Motorway
		Tunnel
		Ferry/motorail
		Toll
		Seasonal roads
		Toll sticker
	Map display	Map content
		Arrows on map:
		Nav time display:
		Map heading up
		Best contrast
	Assistance options	Signs / lane



# Information Displays

Message		Action
		Nav icons in lists
		Hazard spot warning
	Personal data	Clear last destinations
		Clear favourites
		Delete home address
		Clear all
	Reset all settings	
Audio settings	Adaptive volume	
	Sound	
	Nav audio mixing	
	DSP settings	Choose your applicable setting
	DSP equaliser	Choose your applicable setting
	TA	On or Off
	News announcement	On or Off
	Alt. frequency	On or Off
	RDS regional	On or Off
	DAB service link	On or Off
Clock settings	Auto time (GPS)	On or Off
	Set time	
	Set date	
	Set time zone	
	Summer time	On or Off
	24-hour mode	On or Off

# Information Displays

## CLOCK

### Type 1

To adjust the clock, switch the ignition on and press buttons H or M on the information and entertainment display as necessary.

### Type 2

**Note:** Use the information display to adjust the clock. See (page 66).

## TRIP COMPUTER

### Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel information.

### Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

### Fuel Used

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

### Average Fuel

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Press the right arrow button on the current screen to see the EcoMode menu.

### Digital Speedometer

The speed your vehicle is traveling at will display as a digital number.

### All Value

Indicates all the respective trip, distance and average fuel information.

## PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

### Measure Units

To swap between imperial and metric units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

### Switching Chimes Off

To switch chimes off, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

The following chimes can be switched off:

- Warning messages.
- Information messages.

## INFORMATION MESSAGES



E130248

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

# Information Displays

**Note:** Depending on the options on your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type is fitted to your vehicle.

## Message Indicator (If Equipped)



The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages. It will be red or amber in color depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified.

Some messages will be supplemented by a system specific symbol with a message indicator.

## Active City Stop

Message	Indicator	Action
Active City Stop Sensor blocked Clean screen	amber	See <b>Active City Stop</b> (page 158).
Active City Stop not available	amber	See <b>Active City Stop</b> (page 158).
Active City Stop Auto braking	-	See <b>Active City Stop</b> (page 158).

## Airbag

Message	Message indicator	Action
Airbag fault Service now	amber	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Alarm

Message	Message indicator	Action
Alarm activated Check Vehicle	Amber	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 38).
Alarm fault Service required	-	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Automatic High Beam Control

Message	Indicator	Action
Front camera low visibility Clean screen	amber	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield.
Front camera fault Service required	amber	Displays when the front camera sensor has malfunctioned. Have this checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	-	Displays when the front camera sensor has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down.

## Battery and Charging System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Electrical system over-voltage Stop safely	Red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Battery low See manual	Red	Displays to warn of a low battery condition. Switch off all unneeded electrical accessories. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Blind Spot Monitor and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
BLIS Low visibility See manual	Amber	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 155).
BLIS: left sensor fault Service required	Amber	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
BLIS: right sensor fault Service required	Amber	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Information Displays

Message	Message Indicator	Action
BLIS not available Trailer attached	Amber	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 155).
Cross Traffic Vehicle coming from left	Amber	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 155).
Cross Traffic Vehicle coming from right	Amber	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 155).
Cross Traffic Sensor blocked See manual	Amber	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 155).
Cross Traffic fault Service required	Amber	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic disabled Trailer attached	-	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 155).

### Child Power Lock

Message	Message indicator	Action
Child lock fault Service required	amber	Displays when a fault with the system has occurs. Press the switch to switch them off, then press the switch again to switch them on. If the problem persists, contact an authorized dealer.

### Climate Control

Message	Indicator	Action
Auxiliary heater on	amber	See <b>Auxiliary Heater</b> (page 93).
Auxiliary heater off	-	See <b>Auxiliary Heater</b> (page 93).

# Information Displays

## Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Message	Indicator	Action
Front radar sensor blocked See manual	amber	See <b>Cruise Control</b> (page 144).
ACC not available	amber	See <b>Cruise Control</b> (page 144).
Collision Warning fault Service required	amber	See <b>Cruise Control</b> (page 144).
Collision Warn not available	amber	See <b>Cruise Control</b> (page 144).
ACC/Collision Warn fault Service required	amber	See <b>Cruise Control</b> (page 144).

## Driver Alert

Message	Indicator	Action
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	red	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	amber	Take a rest break soon.

## Doors

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Driver door ajar	Red	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.
Passenger door ajar	Red	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.
Driver side rear door ajar	Red	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.
Passenger side rear door ajar	Red	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.
Trunk ajar	Red	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.

## Information Displays

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Hood open	Red	Displays when the hood is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.
Driver door ajar	-	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed.
Passenger door ajar	-	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed.
Driver side rear door ajar	-	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed.
Passenger side rear door ajar	-	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed.
Trunk ajar	-	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Hood open	-	Displays when the hood is not completely closed.

## Engine

Message	Message Indicator	Action
High engine temperature Stop safely	Red	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and allow the engine to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer. See <b>Engine Coolant Check</b> (page 191).
Engine fault Service now	Amber	Engine service is required. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Water detected in fuel Service required	Amber	Displays when water is detected in the fuel. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Engine oil level low Check level	-	Check the engine oil level See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 190).

## Information Displays

### Hill Start Assist

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Hill start assist not available	Amber	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 125).

### Keyless Vehicle

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Ford KeyFree Key not inside car	Red	Displayed when a valid key is not detected within your vehicle. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 108).
Ford KeyFree Key inside vehicle	Amber	Displays to remind you that the key is in the trunk. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 108).
Switch ign. off Press ENGINE Start/Stop button	Red	Displayed as a reminder to switch the ignition off. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 108).
Press brake to start	-	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting your vehicle.
Key Battery low Replace soon	-	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. See <b>Remote Control</b> (page 27).
Ford KeyFree No key detected	-	Displayed if the key is not detected by the system. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 108).
Ford KeyFree Place key in key holder	-	See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 108).
Steering lock engaged turn steering wheel	-	See <b>Steering Wheel Lock</b> (page 110).



# Information Displays

## Lane Keeping Aid

Message	Indicator	Action
Lane keeping sys Fault Service required	amber	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## Lighting

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Headlamp fault Service required	Amber	Displays when an electrical system problem occurs with the headlamp system. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 194).
Low beam Bulb fault	-	Displays when the low beam headlamp bulb has burned out. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 194).
Brake lamp Bulb fault	-	Displays when the brake lamp bulb has burned out. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 194).
Rear fog lamp Bulb fault	-	Displays when the rear fog lamp bulb has burned out. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 194).
Trailer brake lamp Bulb fault	-	Displays when the trailer brake lamp bulb has burned out. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Trailer turn lamp Bulb fault	-	Displays when the trailer turn lamp bulb has burned out. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Maintenance

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Brake fluid level low Service now	Red	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See <b>Brake Fluid Check</b> (page 192).
Washer fluid level low	-	Displays when the washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled. See <b>Washer Fluid Check</b> (page 192).
Check fuel fill inlet	-	Displays when the fuel fill inlet was not properly closed. See <b>Refueling</b> (page 119).
Oil change required	-	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and requires a change. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 190).

## Occupant Protection

Message	Indicator	Action
Service Beltminder	-	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Parking Aid

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Parking aid fault Service required	Amber	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer. See <b>Parking Aid</b> (page 137).
Rear park aid disabled Trailer attached	-	Displays when a trailer is attached.

# Information Displays

## Parking Brake

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Park brake applied	Red	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and your vehicle is moving more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Park brake applied	Amber	See <b>Parking Brake</b> (page 133).
Park brake fault Service now	Amber	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Power Steering

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Steering loss Stop safely	Red	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Steering assist fault Service required	Amber	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Steering fault Service now	Amber	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Start-Stop

Message	Message indicator	Action
Auto Start/Stop Switch ignition off	red	Switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See <b>Auto-Start-Stop</b> (page 114).
Auto Start/Stop fault Service required	amber	Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.
Auto Start/Stop Press a pedal to start engine	-	The engine needs to be restarted, press the clutch pedal to start. See <b>Auto-Start-Stop</b> (page 114).
Auto Start/Stop Select neutral	-	Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See <b>Auto-Start-Stop</b> (page 114).
Auto Start/Stop Manual Start required	-	The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.

## Starting System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Drive to clean exhaust filter See manual	Amber	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 112).
Cleaning exhaust filter	-	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 112).
Exhaust filter cleaning complete	-	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 112).
Engine preheating	-	See <b>Starting a Diesel Engine</b> (page 112).
Press brake to start	-	Displays when starting your vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Press clutch to start	-	Displays when starting your vehicle as a reminder to apply the clutch.
Press brake and clutch to start	-	Displays when starting your vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake and clutch.
Cranking time exceeded	-	Displays when your vehicle fails to start.

# Information Displays

## Towing

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Trailer sway Reduce speed	Red	See <b>Trailer Sway Control</b> (page 164).

## Transmission and Four-Wheel Drive

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Transmission too hot Press brake	Red	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Transmission too hot Press brake	Amber	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Transmission overtem- perature Stop safely	Amber	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Transmission over- heating Stop safely	Amber	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Transmission Service required	Amber	Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
4WD fault Service required	Amber	The system is not functioning correctly and defaulted to front-wheel drive. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 127).
4WD Off	Amber	Displays when the system disables automatically and enters front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 127).
4WD Temporarily disabled	Amber	The system has overheated and defaulted to front-wheel drive. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 127).

## Information Displays

Message	Message Indicator	Action
4WD restored	-	Displays when system operation has been restored. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 127).
Transmission not in Park Select P	-	Displays as a reminder to move the transmission selector lever to park.
Transmission Hot Stop or Speed Up	-	Transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool or speed up.
Transmission Hot Wait ...	-	Transmission is hot. Wait as needed to let it cool.
Transmission too hot Press brake	-	Transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool down.
Transmission warming up Please wait	-	At low outside temperatures, after starting the engine, it may take the transmission several seconds to engage reverse or drive. Keep the brake pedal depressed until these messages disappear from the display.
Transmission limited function See manual	-	Some gears may not be available. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See <b>Automatic Transmission</b> (page 122).
Press brake to unlock gearshift lever	-	Displays to request the operator to apply the brake as needed by the transmission.
Gearshift lever unlocked	-	Displays when the transmission shift lever is unlocked and free to select gears.

## Traction Control

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Traction control off	-	Displays when the traction control system has been switched off. See <b>Using Traction Control</b> (page 134).

# Climate Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

### Recirculated Air

#### WARNING



Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

### Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

### General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Fully close all the windows.

### Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

### Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

## Air Conditioning

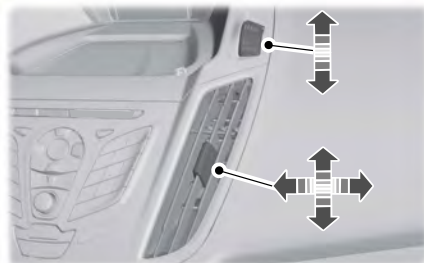
The system directs air through the evaporator for cooling. The evaporator extracts humidity from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The system directs the resulting condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which may cause a small pool to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C.

**Note:** When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.

## AIR VENTS

### Center



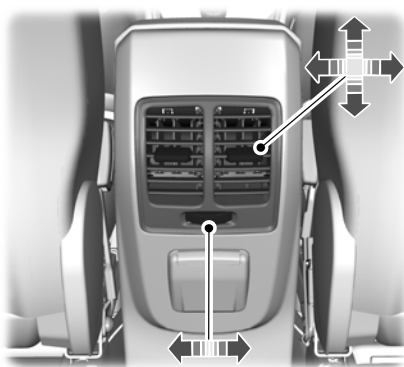
E152449

# Climate Control



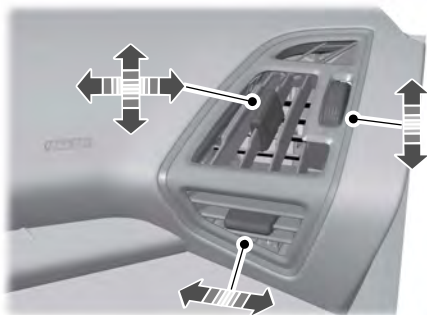
E159050

## Center Console



E159049

## Side

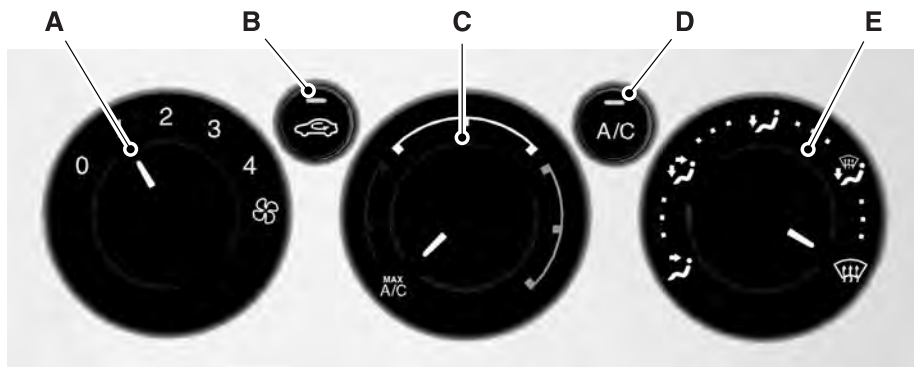


E152450



# Climate Control

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

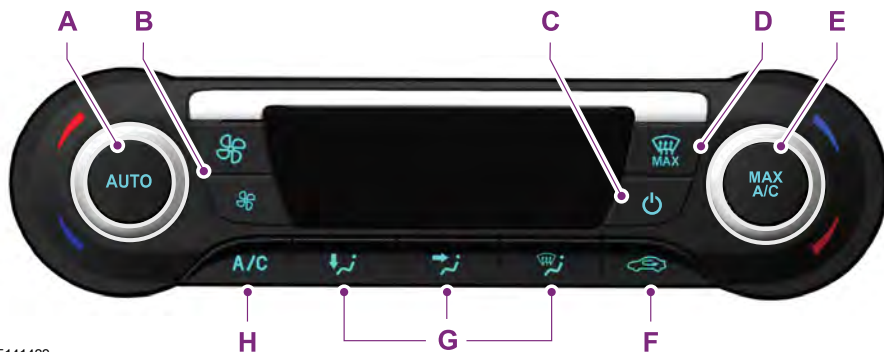


E211736

- A **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- B **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- C **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.
- D **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.
- E **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off.

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E141422

- A **AUTO:** Press the button to select automatic operation. The system automatically controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the airflow to reach and maintain your previously selected temperature.  
Adjust the control to increase or decrease the air temperature for the driver side of the vehicle.
- B **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- C **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- D **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.  
**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- E **MAX A/C:** Press the button to maximize cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.  
Adjust the control to increase or decrease the air temperature for the passenger side of the vehicle. This turns on dual zone.

# Climate Control

- F Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with **A/C**) and may reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically (or be prevented from turning on) in all airflow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce risk of fogging. Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in **Panel** or **Panel and Floor** airflow modes during hot weather in order to improve cooling efficiency.
- G Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.
- H A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.
- Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

## Temperature Control



E133115

You can set the temperature between 60°F (15.5°C) and 85°F (29.5°C). In position LO, the system switches to permanent cooling. In position HI, the system switches to permanent heating.

**Note:** If you select either position LO or HI, the system does not regulate a stable temperature.

## Mono Mode

In this mode, the temperature settings for both the driver side and passenger side are linked. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver side, the system adjusts the temperature to the same setting on the passenger side.

## Switching Mono Mode Off

Select a temperature for the passenger side using the rotary control on the passenger side. Mono mode automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver side and passenger side temperatures independently. The temperature settings for each side are shown in the display.

## Switching Mono Mode Back On

Press and hold the **AUTO** button. The passenger side temperature is adjusted to the driver side temperature setting.

# Climate Control

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** A small amount of air may be felt from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

**Note:** Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

### Manual Climate Control

**Note:** To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position. Increase the temperature and fan speed to improve clearing, if required.

### Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the high fan speed button control.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.	Press the footwell button to distribute air to the footwell air vents.

### Automatic Climate Control

**Note:** Do not adjust the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold. The system automatically adjusts to the previously stored settings. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

**Note:** At low ambient temperatures with AUTO selected, the air stream is directed toward the windshield and side windows for as long as the engine remains cold.

**Note:** When the system is switched off, outside air is prevented from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** When the system is in AUTO mode, and the interior and exterior temperatures are high, the system automatically selects recirculated air to maximize cooling of the interior. When the selected air temperature is reached, the system automatically selects outside air.

**Note:** When you select windshield defrosting and defogging, the instrument panel and footwell level functions automatically switch off and air conditioning switches on. Outside air flows into your vehicle.

# Climate Control

## Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the slow fan speed button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell and windshield air vents position.	Press the footwell and windshield air distribution buttons.
4		Close the instrument panel air vents. Open the side air vents and direct them toward the side windows.

## Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the AUTO button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the slow fan speed button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	Press the instrument panel vent button to distribute air to the instrument panel air vents.

# Climate Control

## Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Apply the parking brake.	Apply the parking brake.
2	Move the transmission selector lever to position P.	Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	Press the MAX A/C button.
4	Adjust the fan speed to the lowest speed setting.	

## Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel and footwell air vents positions.	Press the windshield defrosting and defogging button.
2	Press the A/C button.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	
5	Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.	
6	Close the instrument panel vents.	

# Climate Control

## Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions

1. Adjust the temperature control to the lowest setting.
2. Press the A/C and recirculated air buttons.
3. Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting initially and then adjust it to suit the desired comfort level.

## HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

**Note:** Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.

### Heated Windshield



Press the button to clear the window of thin ice and fog.

### Heated Rear Window



Press the button to clear the window of thin ice and fog. Press the button to switch the system off. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.

### Heated Exterior Mirror (If Equipped)

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

Both mirrors are heated to remove ice, mist and fog when the heated rear window is switched on.

## AUXILIARY HEATER

### Fuel Operated Parking Heater

#### WARNING



Do not use the fuel operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior, it uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank. The system will only operate when your vehicle is stationary with the engine switched off.

Used correctly the system will:

- Warm the engine and the vehicle interior.
- Keep the windows clear of ice in the event of frost and prevent condensation.
- Avoid cold starts to assist the engine to reach operating temperature sooner.

Following a heating cycle, if you do not start the engine the system will not turn on the next programmed heating cycle.

Following a heating cycle we recommend that you drive your vehicle for at least the same period of time as the heating cycle. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

We recommend you switch the system on for approximately 10 minutes every month to prevent the water pump or heater motor seizing.

# Climate Control

The system will only operate if there is a minimum of 7.5 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel in the vehicle fuel tank and the outside air temperature is below 15°C. The system will not operate if the battery charge level is low.

**Note:** When the system is operating, exhaust fumes will come from under your vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** On vehicles with manual climate control, heating the vehicle interior will depend on the heater control settings. See **Climate Control** (page 85).

## Programming the Fuel Operated Parking Heater

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

**Note:** The time and date on your vehicle's clock must be set correctly. See **Clock** (page 72).

**Note:** You must program the time at least 70 minutes before the time you wish to set.

**Note:** The programmed time is when you want your vehicle to be warm and ready to drive, not when the heater turns on.

## To program the fuel operated parking heater, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Convenience	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Park heater	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
<b>Select one of the following:</b>	
Time 1	Allows you to program a heating cycle for each day of the week. These times will remain stored and the system will warm up your vehicle at the programmed times.
Time 2	Allows you to program a second heating cycle for each day of the week. These times will remain stored and the system will warm up your vehicle at the programmed times. Select to set a second heating cycle, for example different times on different days or twice on the same day.
Once	Allows you to program one heating cycle for a specific day.
Heat now	Switches the system on immediately.

## Programming the Time Functions

Set the time you want your vehicle to be warm and ready to drive. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

1. Select the desired days you want the system to warm up your vehicle. Highlight each desired day and press the **OK** button.
2. Highlight the time at the top of the menu and press the **OK** button. The hours will flash.



# Climate Control

3. Set the hours using the up and down arrow buttons.
4. Press the right arrow button. The minutes will flash. Set the minutes using the up and down arrow buttons. Press the **OK** button.

## Programming the Once Function

Selecting this function allows you to program one heating cycle for one specific day.

Set the time you want your vehicle to be warm and ready to drive. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

1. Highlight the time at the top of the menu and press the **OK** button. The hours start to flash.
2. Set the hours using the up and down arrow buttons.
3. Press the right arrow button. Set the minutes using the up and down arrow buttons. Press the **OK** button.

## Switching Programmed Functions Off

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

**To switch the programmed functions off, scroll to:**

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Convenience	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Park heater	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
<b>Select one of the following:</b>	
Time 1	Uncheck the active programmed heating cycles as required.
Time 2	Uncheck the active programmed heating cycles as required.
Once	Uncheck the active programmed heating cycles as required.

## Switching the Heat Now Function On

### WARNING



Do not use the fuel operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

Selecting this function allows you to switch the system on immediately.

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

# Climate Control

To switch the heat now function on, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Convenience	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Park heater	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Heat now	Press the <b>OK</b> button. An X appears in the box when the heater is switched on. To switch the heater off, uncheck the option.

## Switching the Heat Now Function On and Off Using the Remote Control

Selecting this function allows you to switch the system on immediately using the remote control.

**Note:** The vehicle does not need to be unlocked.

1. Press the **ON** button on the remote control to switch the system on.
2. Press the **OFF** button on the remote control to switch the system off.

## Fuel Operated Heater

### WARNING



Do not use the fuel operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

The heater operates by warming the engine cooling system, it uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank. The system will only operate when your vehicle is stationary with the engine switched off.

The system will only operate if there is a minimum of 7.5 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel in the vehicle fuel tank. The system will not operate if the battery charge level is low.

The system automatically turns on and off depending on the engine coolant temperature when the outside air temperature is below 3°C, unless you have switched it off.

**Note:** The default setting is on.

**Note:** When the system is operating, exhaust fumes will come from under your vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** On vehicles with manual climate control, heating the vehicle interior will depend on the heater control settings. See **Climate Control** (page 85).

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

# Climate Control

---

**To switch the auxiliary heater on and off, scroll to:**

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action and Description</b>
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Convenience	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Aux heater	Press the <b>OK</b> button. An X appears in the box when the system is switched on.

# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

### WARNINGS



It is extremely dangerous to ride in the cargo area inside or outside the vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not fitted with seats and seatbelts. Be sure that everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and is using a seatbelt properly.



Ensure that all parts of passengers are inside the vehicle when in motion.



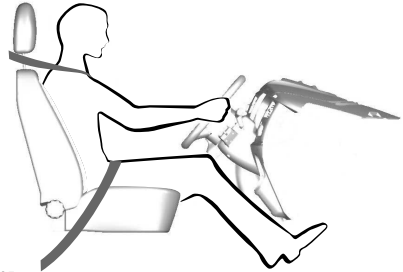
Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.



Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a collision. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.



Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a collision or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and air bags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the air bag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

# Seats

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

### WARNINGS



Fully adjust the head restraints before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

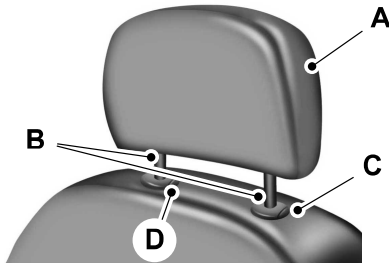


Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.



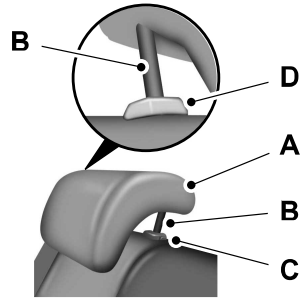
When front seats are in use the head restraints must not be removed

### Front seat head restraint



E138642

### Rear head restraints



E138645

The head restraints consist of:

- A an energy absorbing head restraint
- B two steel stems
- C guide sleeve adjust and unlock button
- D guide sleeve unlock and remove button

## Adjusting the Head Restraint

### Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

### Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

### Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

### Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

# Seats

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

## MANUAL SEATS

### WARNING



Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.

### Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



E130249

### WARNING



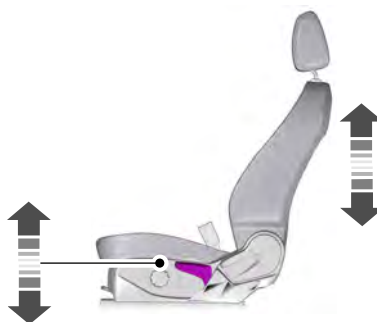
Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

### Adjusting the Lumbar Support



E152451

### Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat



E70730

# Seats

## Recline Adjustment



E138646

### WARNING



Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seatback to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a collision.

## POWER SEATS

### WARNINGS



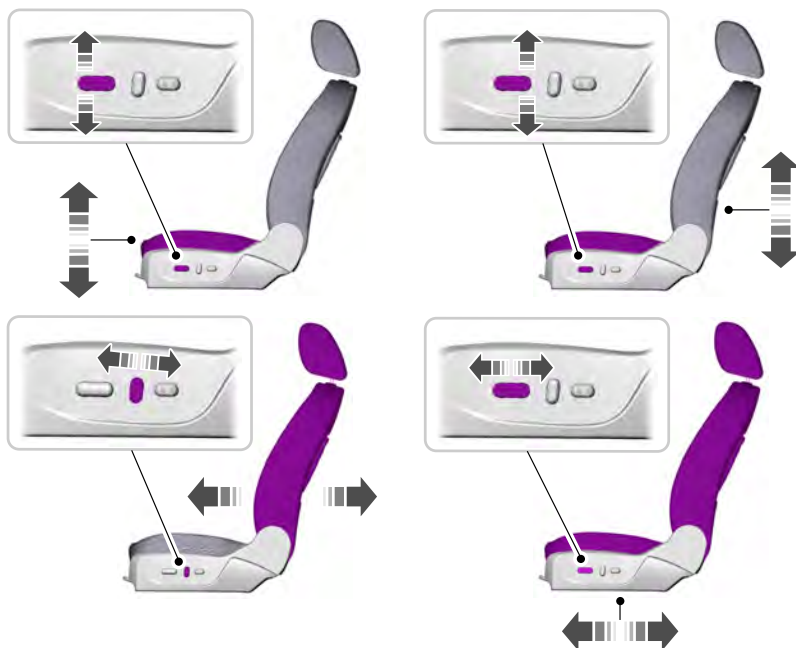
Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

# Seats

## 10-Way



E138647



# Seats

## Power Lumbar



E138648

## REAR SEATS

### Folding the Seatback

#### WARNING



When folding the seatbacks down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.



E159654

With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seatback forward.

**Note:** Lower the head restraints. See *Rear Seats* (page 103).

### Unfolding the Seatback

#### WARNINGS



When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the seatbelts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.



Make sure that the seats and the seatbacks are secure and fully engaged in their catches.

### Recline Adjustment

With the seat occupied, pull the lever up to recline the seat backward.

# Seats

## HEATED SEATS (If Equipped)

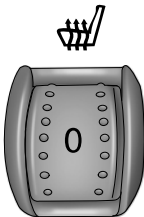
### WARNING



People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E138653

Adjust the control to the desired heat setting.

## REAR SEAT ARMREST (If Equipped)



E138656

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cupholder.

# Auxiliary Power Points

## 12 Volt DC Power Point

### WARNING



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.

**Note:** Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volts DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.

**Note:** Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

**Note:** The 12 volt power point remains on after you switch off the ignition. Leaving devices plugged in for extended periods of time could result in a dead battery.

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point. To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when your vehicle is parked for extended periods.

## Location

Power points may be found:

- On the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the luggage compartment.

## AC Power Point (If Equipped)

### WARNING



Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** The power point will turn off when the ignition is switched off or the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.

**Note:** Depending on the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the voltage supply will be either 110 volts or 230 volts.



E143941

The power point is used for powering electrical devices that require up to 150 watt. It is located on the rear of the center console.

## Auxiliary Power Points

---

When the indicator light, located on the power point, is:

- On — power point is working, ignition is on and a device is plugged in.
- Off — power point is off, ignition is off or no device is plugged in.
- Flashing — power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

The power point is not designed for electric devices such as:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, compressor-driven refrigerators, etc.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment, measuring equipment, etc.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply: microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.

# Storage Compartments

## CUP HOLDERS

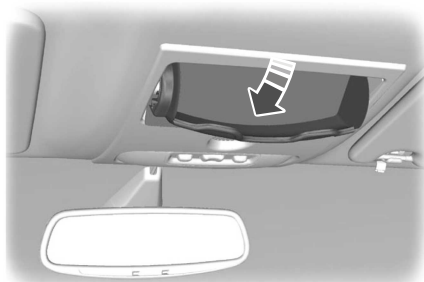
**Note:** *Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.*

### WARNING



Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E75193

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

## FOLDING TRAY

### WARNING



Do not use the trays when your vehicle is moving. Make sure that you secure the trays in the lowered position before setting off.



E72630

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNINGS



Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## IGNITION SWITCH



E72128

**Note:** Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

**O**(off) - The ignition is off.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.

**I** (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

**Note:** Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid your vehicle battery losing charge.

**II** (on) - All electrical circuits operational. Warning lamps and indicators are illuminated.

**III** (start) - cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

## KEYLESS STARTING

### WARNING



Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

**Note:** The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** The ignition will automatically switch off if your vehicle is left unattended. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

## Switching the Ignition On (Accessory Mode)

Press the button once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is located on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. See **At a Glance** (page 9). All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the button again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to turn your vehicle off completely.

## Starting Your Vehicle

### Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Briefly press the button.

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

### Automatic Transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to park.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Briefly press the button.

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

## Diesel Engine

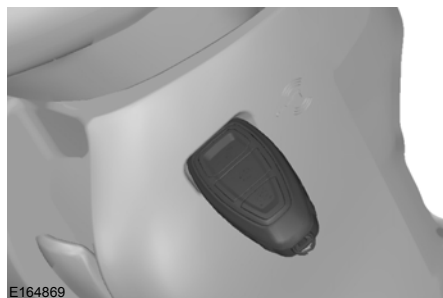
**Note:** Engine cranking will not commence until the engine glow plug cycle has been completed. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

## Failure to Start

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following.



1. Place the passive key into the slot next to the symbol on the steering column.
2. With the passive key in this position, you can use the button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

## Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the button is pressed:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Press the button until the engine has started.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on. A message will be shown in the display.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits warning lamps and indicators will be switched off.

### Manual Transmission

Briefly press the button.

### Automatic Transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to park.
2. Press the button.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

### WARNING



Stopping the engine when your vehicle is moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be off.

1. Press and hold the button for a moment, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to park and switch the ignition off.

## Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid passive key is not detected.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the button. After 10 seconds have expired, you can no longer start your vehicle if a valid passive key is not detected.

Once your vehicle has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if a valid passive key has not been detected. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key. You cannot start your vehicle if a valid passive key is not detected within 10 seconds.

### Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the button is pressed:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals
2. Press the button until the engine has started.

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to Ignition on. A message will be shown in the display.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK

### WARNING



Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## Vehicles with Keyless Starting

**Note:** *The steering wheel lock does not engage when the ignition is on or if your vehicle is moving.*

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock. This operates automatically.

The steering wheel lock engages after a short period after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside of your vehicle.

## Unlocking the Steering Wheel

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

Switch the ignition on or press the brake pedal.

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

Switch the ignition on or press the clutch pedal.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

**Note:** *You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time, for example 10 seconds. The number of start attempts is limited to approximately six. If you exceed this limit, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.*

## Cold or Hot Engine

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

## Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
2. Start the engine.

### All Vehicles

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -13°F (-25°C), press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

## Flooded Engine

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

### All Vehicles

If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.

## Engine Idle Speed after Starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

The idle speed will vary depending on certain factors. These include vehicle component and ambient temperatures as well as electrical and climate system demands.

## Failure to Start

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

### Cold or Hot Engine

#### All Vehicles

**Note:** When the temperature is below -15°C, you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.

**Note:** You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time.

**Note:** After a limited number of attempts to start your engine, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.



Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

### Vehicles With Manual Transmission

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

### Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

## Failure to Start

### Vehicles With Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The filter forms part of the emissions reduction system on your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

### Regeneration

#### WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

**Note:** Avoid running out of fuel.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

**Note:** During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

**Note:** Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.

**Note:** After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function. Your vehicle will carry out this process automatically.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

## SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

### Vehicles With a Turbocharger

#### WARNING



Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

## AUTO-START-STOP

**Note:** For vehicles with auto-start-stop, the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when your vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights. The engine will automatically restart when you press the clutch pedal or when required by a vehicle system, for example to recharge the battery.

To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the transmission lever to neutral and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.

## Using Auto-Start-Stop

### WARNINGS



The engine may restart automatically if required by the system.



Switch the ignition off before opening the hood or carrying out any maintenance.



Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.



The indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

**Note:** The system only operates when the engine is warm and the outside temperature is within the operating temperature limits of the system.

**Note:** If you stall the engine, and then press the clutch pedal within a short period of time, the system will automatically restart the engine.

**Note:** The auto-start-stop indicator will illuminate green when the engine shuts down. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).

**Note:** When the auto-start-stop indicator flashes amber, shift into neutral or press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** If the system detects a malfunction, it will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** When you switch the system off, the switch will illuminate.

**Note:** The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on. To switch the system off, press the switch in the instrument panel. The system will only be switched off for the current ignition cycle. To turn it on, press the switch again. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

## To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate.
- Low battery voltage.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The driver door has been opened.
- Low engine operating temperature.
- Low brake system vacuum.
- If a road speed of 5 km/h has not been exceeded.
- The driver seatbelt has not been fastened.

## To Re-Start the Engine

**Note:** The transmission must be in neutral.

## Unique Driving Characteristics

---

Press the clutch pedal.

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low battery voltage.
- To maintain the interior climate.

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

### WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel capless fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.



Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking "Antabuse" or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

### WARNINGS



Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.



Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

**Note:** We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.

The engine in your vehicle has been optimised for operation on **95 octane unleaded** petrol that meets the specification defined by **EN 228**, or equivalent.

Your vehicle can operate using **91 octane unleaded**, however if you choose to do so, you may notice some minor loss of performance, economy and increased engine noise.

**Note:** Owners should note that the use of petrol containing ethanol can be expected to increase the fuel consumption of your vehicle.

**Note:** Your vehicle may use petrol that contains up to 10% ethanol. Do not use petrol containing more than 10% ethanol in your vehicle. Use of petrol containing more than 10% ethanol may be damaging to your vehicle and may affect your vehicle's warranty.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

## Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

## FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

### WARNINGS



Do not mix diesel with oil, gasoline or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.



Do not add kerosene, paraffin or gasoline to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.



Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

**Note:** We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

**Note:** Bio-diesel blended fuels up to 10% (B10) is acceptable to be used in this vehicle.

## Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain bio-diesel, it is recommended to fill the tank with purely mineral diesel (where available) or add an anti-oxidant prior to long-term storage of your vehicle exceeding two months. Your dealer can help you with a suitable anti-oxidant.

# Fuel and Refueling

## Diesel-Winter Driving

Diesel fuel purchased in the city and coastal regions often has different cold temperature properties than diesel sold in Alpine regions. Wax may form in the vehicle's fuel lines if the vehicle is left outside overnight or for a number of hours in below zero temperatures. This means that the vehicle will not start or run correctly until the wax has melted. To avoid this problem, if a prolonged or overnight stay is planned in an alpine region then it is strongly recommended that the vehicle carry enough fuel to get to the Alpine region and is then refuelled locally so that at least 50% of the fuel volume is Alpine mix diesel. At the time of publication, Alpine mix diesel is available at the following BP service stations:

**Victoria** Bright, Corryong and Mansfield  
**NSW** Jindabyne, Thredbo, Tumut, Talbingo, Adaminaby and Cooma. Please confirm current availability at the time of your trip.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refuelling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. With keyless ignition, just start the engine. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 4.6 litres of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 4.6 litres may be required.

## Refilling with a Portable Fuel Container

### WARNINGS



Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the capless fuel system, they could become stuck. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, which could result in serious personal injury.



Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.



Do not pump fuel into an ungrounded fuel container, as the static electricity produced during the flow of petrol through the nozzle may cause fire.

To avoid static build up:

- Place the approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill the container whilst in the vehicle or utility tray.
- Keep the nozzle in contact with the fuel container whilst filling.

**Note:** *Do not use aftermarket funnels; they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it. The included funnel has been specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.*

When filling your vehicle's fuel tank from a portable fuel container, use the funnel included with your vehicle.



# Fuel and Refueling




E157452

1. Locate the plastic funnel inside the foam box in the spare wheel well.
2. Slowly insert the funnel into the capless fuel system.
3. Fill your vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.
4. When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. Extra funnels can be purchased from your authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.


## CATALYTIC CONVERTER

### WARNING





 Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

## Driving with a Catalytic Converter

### WARNINGS






 Avoid running out of fuel.

### WARNINGS

-  Do not crank the engine for long periods.
-  Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.
-  Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 172).
-  Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

## REFUELING

### WARNINGS

-  Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.
-  Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.
-  Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.
-  Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This may cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked immediately.
-  When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

# Fuel and Refueling

## WARNINGS



If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel tank filler door briefly from a distance not less than 20 cm.



Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.



Stop refueling after the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the second time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

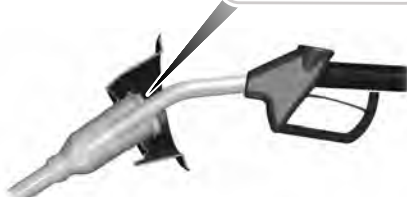
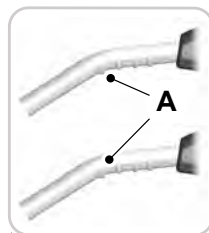
**Note:** Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.



E206911

- A Type 1: Left hand side - press the fuel tank filler door to open it.
- B Type 1: Right hand side - press the fuel tank filler door to open it.
- C Type 2: Left hand side - pull the fuel tank filler door to open it.
- D Type 2: Right hand side - pull the fuel tank filler door to open it.

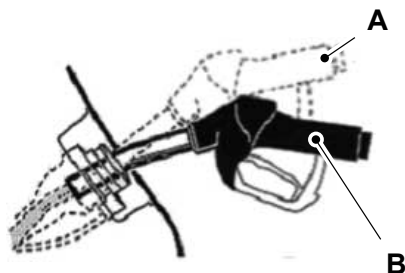
1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.



E139202

**Note:** When you insert the correct size fuel pump nozzle a spring loaded inhibitor will open.

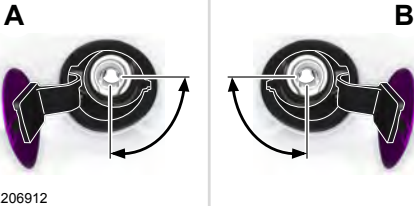
2. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



E139203

## Fuel and Refueling

3. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A may affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



4. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



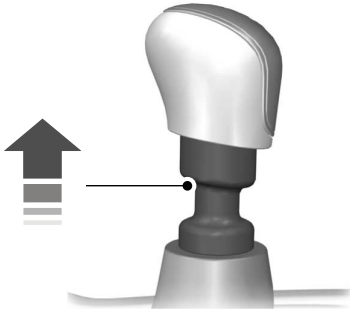
5. Slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.

# Transmission

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### Selecting Reverse Gear

Do not engage reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.



E99067

Raise the collar when you select reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### WARNINGS



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the Ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Some sound and shift characteristics are unique to the PowerShift transmission in your vehicle and will be felt as the transmission operates. These operations are normal and do not affect the durability of the transmission. You may notice the following characteristics of this technology:

- Although the gears shift automatically, the shifting feel and sound experienced from the Powershift transmission is similar to those of a manual transmission, which is normal.
- The Powershift transmission continuously makes electronic adjustments to optimize shift quality. During the initial break-in period, you may feel slight vibrations when accelerating your vehicle from low speeds.

### Selector Lever Positions



E142628

P	Park
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D	Drive
S	Sport mode

# Transmission

## WARNING



Apply the brakes before shifting the gearshift lever to a forward or reverse gear. Keep the brakes applied until you are ready to move off.

Press the button on the front of the gearshift lever to shift to each position.

The gearshift lever position will be shown in the instrument cluster display.

## Park (P)

### WARNINGS



Shift the gearshift lever to park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.



Apply the parking brake and shift the gearshift lever to park (P) before leaving your vehicle. Make sure that the gearshift lever is latched in position.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

**Note:** A warning tone sounds if you open the driver door and you have not shifted the gearshift lever to park (P).

## Reverse (R)

### WARNINGS



Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.



Always come to a complete stop before shifting the gearshift lever out of reverse (R).

Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) to allow your vehicle to move backward.

## Neutral (N)

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

## Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy and smoothness. Shift the gearshift lever to drive (D) to allow your vehicle to move forward and shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will shift to the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and your input.

## Sport Mode (S)

Switch on sport mode by shifting the gearshift lever to sport (S).

## SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission

Your vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic transmission gearshift lever. The SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears up or down as desired.

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, SelectShift still automatically makes some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although SelectShift makes some downshifts for you, it still allows you to downshift at any time as long as the SelectShift determines that damage will not be caused to the engine from over-revving.

**Note:** Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.

# Transmission

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by pressing the + button.

**If equipped with the toggle on the gearshift lever, press the + toggle switch on the side of the gearshift lever to activate SelectShift.**

- Press the (+) button to upshift.
- Press the (-) button to downshift.



E142629

**If equipped with steering wheel paddles, pull the + paddle on the steering wheel to activate SelectShift.**

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.



E144821

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear. If a gear is requested but not available due to vehicle conditions (low speed, too high engine speed for requested gear selection), the current gear will flash three times.

## Emergency Park Position Release Lever

### WARNINGS



Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.



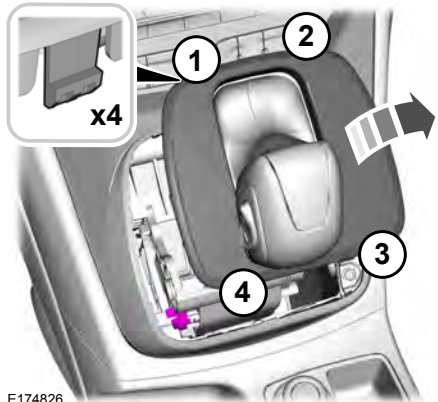
This procedure requires you to shift the gearshift lever out of park (P) causing your vehicle to roll. Make sure you fully set the parking brake before attempting to release the gearshift lever.



If you release the parking brake and the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working correctly. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

In the event of an electrical malfunction or if the vehicle battery has no charge, use the following procedure to shift the gearshift lever from the park (P) position.

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.



E174826

2. Using a screwdriver, remove the gearshift lever housing cover.

# Transmission



E142627

3. Locate the white lever, situated on the left hand side of the gearshift lever.



E174827

4. Move the white lever toward the rear of the vehicle and move the gearshift lever out of park (P) and into neutral (N).
5. Replace the gearshift lever housing cover, apply the brake pedal, switch the ignition on and release the parking brake.

**Note:** See an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern.

Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

## HILL START ASSIST

### WARNINGS



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and move the transmission selector lever into position **P** (Park).



You must remain in your vehicle once you have turned the system on.



During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

# Transmission

## WARNINGS



If the engine is revved excessively or if a malfunction is detected, the system will turn off.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, (for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space).

The system will turn on automatically on any slope which can result in significant vehicle rollback.

## Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will turn on automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

## Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** You can only switch the system on and off if your vehicle has a manual transmission.

**Note:** The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See (page 66).



## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

### PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

This system is a proactive system. It has the ability to anticipate wheel slip and transfer torque to the rear wheels before slip occurs. Even when wheel slip is not present, the system is continuously making adjustments to the torque distribution, in an attempt to improve straight line and cornering behavior, both on and off road.

The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.

All components of the system are sealed and do not require maintenance.

### USING FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE

**Note:** When a system malfunction is present, a warning message will be displayed in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 72). This means the system is not functioning correctly and has defaulted to front-wheel drive only. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** A message will be displayed in the information display when the system overheats and switches to front-wheel drive. This condition may occur if you operate your vehicle in extreme high load conditions or with excessive wheel slip, (i.e. deep sand). To resume four-wheel drive function as soon as possible, stop your vehicle in a safe location and switch the ignition off. After the system cools and normal four-wheel drive functionality resumes, a message will be displayed for approximately five seconds.

**Note:** If a warning message appears in the information display when using the spare tire, it should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced road tire and you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** It is recommended that you reinstall the repaired tire or replace the tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause system damage or default the system to front-wheel drive.

The system gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than moderate sand, snow, mud or rough roads could subject it to excessive stress and heat which could result in system damage. This will not be covered by your vehicle warranty.



E142669

A graphic will be displayed in the information display to advise you of the power distribution between the front and rear wheels. The more the area is filled the more power is being distributed to that wheel.

### Driving in Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive

Four-wheel drive vehicles are suitable for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the freeway.

**Note:** It may be useful to switch Traction control off. This allows for more wheel spin and engine torque in certain off road conditions or if your vehicle becomes stuck.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

---

When driving at slow speeds off road under high load conditions, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the air conditioning may cycle on and off to prevent the engine from overheating.

### Basic Operating Principles

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on surfaces made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice proceed with care.

### If Your Vehicle leaves the Road

If your vehicle leaves the road, reduce your vehicle speed and avoid severe braking. When your vehicle speed has been reduced ease your vehicle back onto the road. Do not turn the steering wheel sharply while returning your vehicle to the road.

It may be safer to stay on the shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the road. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.

It may be less risky to strike small objects, such as freeway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the road which could cause your vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

### Emergency Maneuvers

In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid over-driving your vehicle (i.e. turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering can result

in loss of vehicle control. Apply smooth pressure to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal when changes in vehicle speed are required. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration and braking. This could result in an increased risk of vehicle roll over, loss of vehicle control and personal injury. Use all available road surface to bring your vehicle to a safe direction of travel.

In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.

If your vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e. from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way your vehicle responds to a maneuver (i.e. steering, acceleration or braking).

### Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip.

Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This will cause the system to overheat. A message will be displayed in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 72).

To resume operation, switch the ignition off and allow the system to cool down for a minimum of 15 minutes. After the system has cooled down, a message will be displayed briefly in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 72).

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Avoid driving at excessive speeds, this causes vehicle momentum to work against you and your vehicle could become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

### Mud and Water

#### Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. If your vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

#### Water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth and avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims. If the ignition system gets wet, your vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop your vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by applying light pressure to the brake pedal while moving slowly.

**Note:** Driving through deep water may damage the transmission. If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and power transfer unit lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.

### Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

**Note:** Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If your vehicle stalls, do not try to turn around because this could cause vehicle roll over. It is better to reverse back to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



E143949

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral. Disengage overdrive or move the transmission selector lever to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer your vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.

### Driving on Snow and Ice

#### WARNING



If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

**Note:** Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.

Four-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle. Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it will not stop any faster as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. As your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 132).

### If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.

### Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty. For this reason, we strongly recommend that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (i.e. lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

## **Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)**

---

We recommend that you use caution when your vehicle has either a high load or device (i.e. ladder or luggage racks). Any modifications to your vehicle that raise the center of gravity may cause your vehicle to roll over when there is a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to maintain your vehicle correctly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect you and your passenger's safety. We recommend you frequently inspect your vehicle's chassis components when your vehicle is subject to off road usage.

# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See **Cleaning the Alloy Wheels** (page 203).

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

## Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Shift the transmission to park (P) (automatic transmission) or to a low gear (manual transmission), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the dealer for service.

## Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

## Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

**Note:** When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.

- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

## PARKING BRAKE

### WARNING



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**Note:** *Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.*

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift the gearshift lever to park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift the gearshift lever to park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

# Traction Control

---

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

### **Switching the System Off and On Using the Information Display Controls**

If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 66).

### **Switching the System Off Using the Switch (If Equipped)**

The location of the switch is on the instrument panel.

Press the switch. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the switch again to return the system to normal mode.



# Stability Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Electronic Stability Program

#### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

**Note:** *Electronic Stability Program (ESP) is also known as Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC).*

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

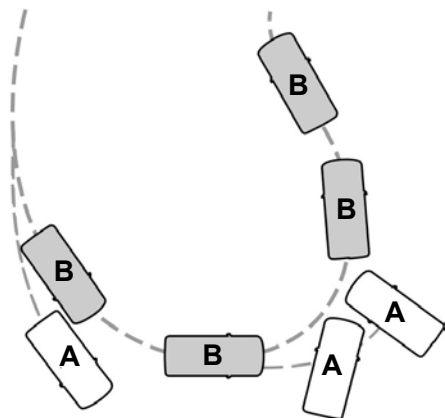
### Stability Control Warning Lamp

While driving, it flashes when the system is operating. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

**Note:** *The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

You can switch the traction control system off and on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 134).



E72903

- A Without ESP
- B With ESP

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. This is performed by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as needed.

# Parking Aids

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



If your vehicle has a non-Ford approved trailer tow module the system may not correctly detect objects.



The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.



The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.



The system does not detect objects that are moving away from your vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move toward your vehicle.



Take particular care when reversing with a tow ball arm or a rear fitted accessory. For example, a bicycle carrier. The rear parking aid will only indicate the approximate distance from the rear bumper to an object.



Sensing is only an aid to detect some objects when moving forward or backward at low speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather or an external motor and fan can affect the sensors; this may include reduced performance or false activation. To help avoid personal injury you must read and understand the limitations of the system detailed in this section.

### WARNINGS



The parking aid system may not prevent contact with small or moving objects that are close to the ground. The parking aid system gives an audible warning when it detects a large object helping to avoid damage to your vehicle. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

**Note:** If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 20 cm.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is turned off automatically when trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket through a Ford approved trailer tow module.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice or snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.

**Note:** The system may emit false alerts if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully loaded.

**Note:** The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensors and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the alert will turn off. As you continue the inner sensors will detect objects directly behind your vehicle.

# Parking Aids

## PARKING AID

### WARNINGS



To help avoid personal injury, read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at parking speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.



To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the sensing system.



This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist you in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.



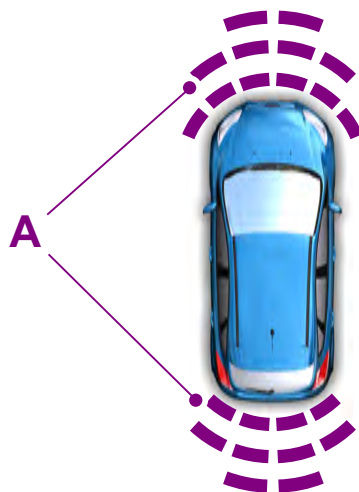
Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

**Note:** Keep the sensors located on the bumper or fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false beeps.

The system warns you of obstacles within a certain range of the bumper area. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on. It becomes active when you press the parking aid button or move the transmission selector lever to reverse gear and your vehicle speed is below 8 mph (12 km/h).

When receiving a detection warning, the radio volume is reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio volume returns to the previous level.



E130382

- A Coverage area of up to 31 inches (80 centimeters) from the front of your vehicle, up to 72 inches (183 centimeters) from the rear bumper and about 6–14 inches (15–35 centimeters) to the side of the front end of your vehicle.

## Parking Aids

The system sounds an audible warning when obstacles are near either bumper in the following manner:

- Objects detected by the front sensors are indicated by a high-pitched tone from the front speakers.
- Objects detected by the rear sensors are indicated by a lower pitched tone from the rear speakers. As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases.
- The sensing system reports the obstacle which is closest to the front or rear of your vehicle. For example, if an obstacle is 24 inches (60 centimeters) from the front of your vehicle and at the same time, an obstacle is only 16 inches (40 centimeters) from the rear of your vehicle, the lower pitched tone sounds.
- An alternating warning sounds from the front and rear if there are objects at both bumpers that are closer than 12 inches (30 centimeters).
- If a stationary or receding object is detected further than 12 inches (30 centimeters) from the side of your vehicle, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.

The system detects certain objects when the transmission selector lever is in reverse:

- and your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less
- but your vehicle is not moving, and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less
- and your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Press the button to switch the system off. It will remain off for the entire ignition cycle. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (If Equipped)

#### WARNINGS



At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the manoeuvre.



The system may not detect parked vehicles with overhanging loads, street furniture or other items. You must make sure that the selected space is suitable for parking.



Do not use the system if there is an overhanging item attached to your vehicle roof.



Do not use the system if a trailer is attached to your vehicle.



Do not use the system if a bike rack is attached to the back of your vehicle.



If interrupted before the manoeuvre is completed, the system will turn off. The steering wheel position will not indicate the true position of the steering and you will have to take control of your vehicle.



Make sure that your hands, arms and loose clothing do not get caught in the rotating steering wheel.

**Note:** After a tire change the system will go through a relearning procedure. During this time the system performance may deteriorate.

# Parking Aids

The system will detect a suitable parallel parking space and steer your vehicle into the space. The system controls the steering while you control the accelerator, transmission and brakes. You can stop the manoeuvre at any time by holding the steering wheel or pressing the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 9).

The system will visually and audibly instruct you throughout the manoeuvre to safely park your vehicle.

## Using the System

**Note:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

**Note:** The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.

**Note:** The sensors may not detect the curb.

**Note:** If the traction control system is disabled active park assist will not be available.

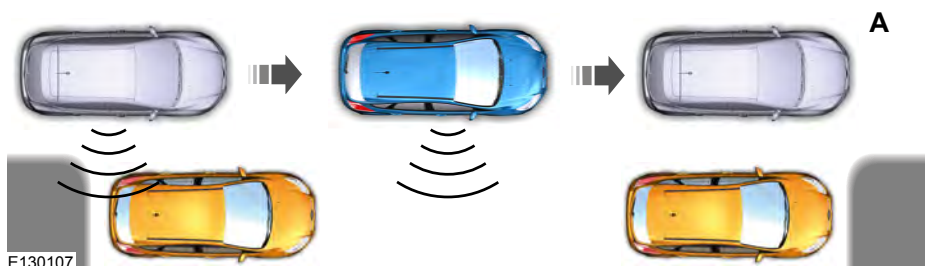
The system may not align your vehicle correctly if:

- a spare tire or a significantly worn tire more than the other tires is used
- you use a tire size not recommended by us
- the tires skid
- the weather conditions are poor (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc).

Move forward at a maximum speed of 22 mph (35 km/h) and keep a passing distance between 1.3 - 6.6 feet (0.4 - 2 meters) to the parked vehicles or objects. Press the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 9). Use the direction indicator to select searching either to the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

**Note:** If you do not make a selection the system will default to the passenger's side.

**Note:** The system will not offer a suitable parking space if it does not detect a safe distance to the other object. For example, vehicles parked too close on the opposite side.



**Note:** You can disable the chimes using the information display. See **Personalized Settings** (page 72).

The information and entertainment display will inform you and a chime will be heard when a suitable space is found. To park your vehicle, follow the instructions on the information and entertainment display.

## Parking Aids


**Note:** The arrow symbols or graphics in the display indicate on which side of your vehicle the system will park. The display will also advise you when to select reverse gear.

Slow down and stop at approximately position **A**, then follow the system instructions.



E130108

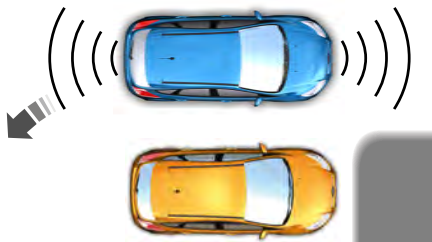
### WARNING

 You must take full control of your vehicle when the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h) as the system is disabled.

Cautiously move your vehicle backward using the accelerator and brake pedals. Parking aid warning tones will sound. Stop your vehicle when you hear a continuous tone.


You can take control of the manoeuvre by holding the steering wheel. If a message appears in the display, press the active park assist switch to resume. See **At a Glance** (page 9).


Move your vehicle forward. Stop your vehicle when you hear a continuous tone. The display will indicate when the system has finished the manoeuvre.





### REAR VIEW CAMERA (If Equipped)


#### WARNINGS

 The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

 Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

 Use caution when using the rear video camera and the luggage compartment door is ajar. If the luggage compartment door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the luggage compartment door is ajar.

 Use caution when turning camera features on or off. Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

# Parking Aids

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E142435

The camera is located on the luggage compartment door.

## Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

**Note:** *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 12 km/h and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

**Note:** *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is ajar, no rear view camera features display.*

**Note:** *When towing, the camera only sees what is towed behind your vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear once the trailer tow connector is engaged.*

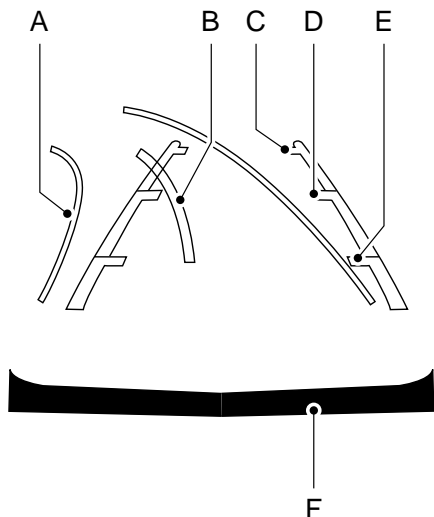
The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

## Camera Guidelines

**Note:** *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

# Parking Aids



E142436

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

## Manual Zoom

### WARNING



When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).



# Parking Aids

---

## **Camera System Settings**

To access any of the rear view camera system settings, make the following selections in the multifunctional display when the transmission is not in reverse (R):

- With Touch Screen: Settings > Vehicle > Camera Settings
- Without Touch Screen: Menu > Camera Settings

## ***Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot (If Equipped)***

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

## ***Rear Camera Delay***

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h.

## USING CRUISE CONTROL

### WARNINGS



Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 16 km/h below the set speed while driving uphill.



E166821

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

## Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release **ON**.



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster.

## Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

## Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

## Canceling the Set Speed

Pull and release **CAN** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

## Resuming the Set Speed

Pull and release **RES**.

## Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release **OFF** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

# Cruise Control

## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system. You must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.



When you use the system you are responsible for maintaining the correct distance and speed. Always pay attention to the traffic conditions and intervene when the system is not maintaining a suitable speed or distance.



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



The system does not brake for slow or stationary vehicles, pedestrians, objects in the road, oncoming and crossing vehicles.



Do not use the system in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



Do not use the system on icy or slippery roads.



Do not use the system when entering or leaving a freeway.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free from dirt, metal badges or objects. This includes vehicle front protectors and additional lights which may prevent the sensor from operating.

The system is designed to help you maintain a gap from the vehicle in front of you. If there is no vehicle in front of you the system will maintain a set speed. The system is intended to provide enhanced operation of your vehicle when following other vehicles which are in the same lane and traveling in the same direction.

The system is based on the use of a radar sensor which projects a beam directly forward of your vehicle. This beam will detect any vehicle ahead within the system's range.

The radar sensor is located behind the front grille.

**Note:** Only use the system when conditions are favorable, for example on freeways and main roads with steady free flowing traffic.

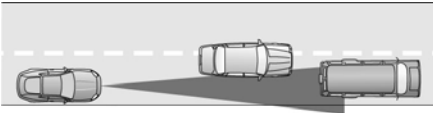
**Note:** The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. In some situations it may detect a vehicle other than the one expected or not detect any vehicle at all.

**Note:** When you switch the system on, it is possible that you will hear some unusual sounds during automatic braking. This is normal and caused by the automatic braking system.

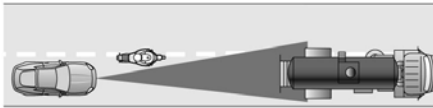
# Cruise Control

## Detection Beam Issues

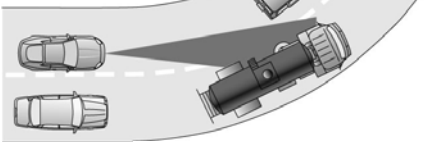
**A**



**B**



**C**



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

- With vehicles that edge into your lane that can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane (**A**). Motorcyclists may be detected late, or not at all. (**B**)
- With vehicles in front of you when going into and coming out of a bend (**C**). The detection beam will not follow sharp curves in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

## Automatic Braking

### WARNINGS



You must take immediate action once alerted, as the adaptive cruise control braking will not be sufficient to keep a safe distance to the vehicle in front of you.



In some cases there may be no warning or the warning may be delayed. You should always apply the brakes when necessary.



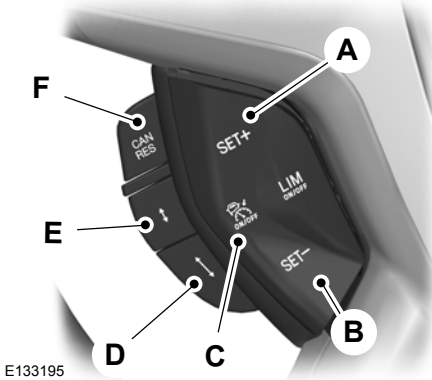
When following a vehicle, the system will not automatically decelerate to a stop.

If required, the system will automatically brake for you to maintain the set gap between your vehicle and the one detected in front of you. This braking capacity is limited to approximately 30% of the total manual braking capacity to maintain smooth and comfortable cruising. If your vehicle needs to brake more heavily than this and you do not intervene by braking manually, an alarm will sound and a warning symbol will be shown in the display.

# Cruise Control

## Using the System

Use the steering wheel controls to operate the system.



- A Set speed increase
- B Set speed decrease
- C On and off
- D Gap increase
- E Gap decrease
- F Cancel and resume

## Switching the System On

Press switch C. The system is set to standby mode.

## Setting a Speed

**Note:** The system must be in standby mode.

Press switch A or B to select your desired cruise speed. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.

## Changing the Set Speed

**Note:** Vehicle speed may be increased and decreased at intervals of 5 mph or 5 km/h depending on your unit of measure setting.

**Note:** If the system does not react to these changes the reason may be that the gap interval to the vehicle in front of you prevents an increase in speed.

Press switch A to increase or switch B to decrease the set speed until the desired set speed is shown in the information display. Your vehicle speed will gradually change to the selected speed.

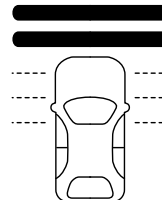
## Setting the Vehicle Gap

**Note:** Use the appropriate gap setting in accordance with local traffic regulations.

**Note:** The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance will automatically adjust with your speed. For example on a gap setting of four bars, the time gap is 1.8 seconds. This will mean that at a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h), the distance to the vehicle in front of you will be maintained at 164 feet (50 meters).

**Note:** If you depress the accelerator for a short period of time, for example when overtaking, the system will temporarily switch off. It will switch back on when you release the accelerator pedal. A message will be shown in the display.

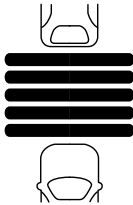
**Note:** The gap setting will remain unchanged each time you switch the ignition on.



# Cruise Control

The distance between you and the vehicle detected in front of you is maintained by a variable setting. This setting is represented by horizontal bars displayed in the information display. Selecting one bar gives the smallest gap and selecting all bars gives the largest gap. These bars are shown empty when in standby mode and filled when the system is in use.

When the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you, you will only see your vehicle displayed in the information display below the bars. The system will maintain the set speed when conditions permit. The system also maintains the set gap and displays this in the information display.



E82312

When the system detects a vehicle in front of you, it will be displayed above the horizontal bars.

This is a follow mode. The system will accelerate or decelerate as necessary to maintain the set gap. The selected gap will determine the acceleration behavior of the system.

Pull switch E to decrease the gap or switch D to increase the gap. The number of bars in the information display represents the set gap.

**Note:** The recommended gap setting is four bars.

## Standby Mode

**Note:** You will cancel the system if you move the transmission selector lever to neutral or depress the clutch or accelerator pedal for a long period of time.

Press the brake pedal or pull switch F to cancel the system. The system will return to standby mode allowing you full manual control of your vehicle. The memory will retain the set speed and gap setting.

Pull switch F again to resume. The system will resume with the previously set speed and gap setting if conditions permit.

## Switching the System Off

Press switch C.

**Note:** This will not retain the stored speed.

## Automatic Switch Off

**Note:** A message will be shown in the display if the engine speed drops too low. It will advise you to change down a gear (manual transmission only). If you do not follow this recommendation then the system will automatically switch off.

**Note:** The system will not operate when traction control is off.

The system is dependent on various other systems, for example anti-lock braking system and electronic stability program. When a safety system has a malfunction or is reacting to an emergency, the system will automatically switch off.

You will hear an audible tone and a message will be shown in the display. You must then intervene and adapt your driving and speed to vehicles in front of you.

An automatic switch off can occur if:

- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 17 mph (25 km/h).
- The tires lose traction.

# Cruise Control

- The brake temperature is too high, for example when driving on mountainous or hilly roads.
- The engine speed is too low.
- The radar sensor is covered.
- You apply the parking brake.

## Forward Alert Function

### WARNINGS



Never wait for a crash warning. When driving you are responsible for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the system is used.



The system will only react to vehicles in front of you traveling in the same direction and will not react to slow or stationary vehicles.



Never drive in a manner to provoke the system. The system is designed to assist in emergencies only.



Warnings may be absent, triggered late or triggered unnecessarily due to detection beam issues. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 145).

**Note:** The brake support system only reduces the crash speed if you brake immediately once alerted.

**Note:** If you depress the brake pedal quick enough, you will maintain full braking. This is regardless of how much force you apply to the pedal.

**Note:** Brake support prepares the braking system for rapid braking by gently applying the brake. You may notice a slight jerk.

**Note:** Crash alerts will only occur when you switch the system on. Brake support is always on and you can not turn it off.

**Note:** You can use the system with or without switching the adaptive cruise control system on.

**Note:** The system uses the same radar sensors as adaptive cruise control and therefore has the same limitations. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 145).

The system is designed to assist you by warning you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

The system is designed to alert you by warning chimes and a visual warning in the information display.

Brake support is turned on to enable full braking effectiveness and reduce the severity of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

## Switching the System On and Off

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See (page 66).

**Note:** When you switch the system off, a warning indicator will remain illuminated in the information display. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).

**Note:** The system status and settings will remain unchanged each time you switch the ignition on.

## Adjusting the Warning Sensitivity

This will determine how early the system alerts you. You can adjust the sensitivity using the steering wheel controls. See (page 66).

# Driving Aids

## SPEED LIMITER

### Principle of Operation

#### WARNING



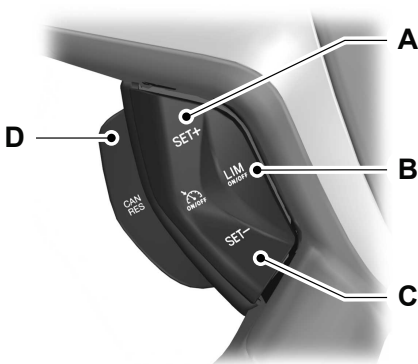
When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning will be given.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

### Using the System

**Note:** *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.*

**The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.**



- C Set speed decrease
- D Cancel and resume

### Switching the System On and Off

Press switch B. The information display will prompt you to set a speed.

### Setting the Speed Limit

Use the cruise control switches to alter the maximum speed setting.

Press switch A or C to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.

Pull switch D to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm this has been turned off by showing the set speed crossed out.

Pull switch D again to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm this has been turned on by showing the set speed again.

### Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily turn the system off. The system will turn on once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

### System Warnings

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, it will flash in the information display and you will hear an audible warning chime.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, it will flash in the information display.

E133198

- A Set speed increase
- B On and off



# Driving Aids

## DRIVER ALERT (If Equipped)

### Principle of Operation

#### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.



Take regular rest breaks as required and do not wait for the system to warn you if you feel tired.



Take rest breaks only where it is safe to do so.



Certain driving styles and behavior may result in the system issuing a warning even if you are not feeling tired.



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



The system may not operate in areas during roadwork construction.



The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.



Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.



If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system assists you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.

**Note:** The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior.

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

### Using Driver Alert

#### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

The system will calculate your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

#### System Warnings

**Note:** The system will not issue warnings below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it will issue a further warning. This will remain in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 72).

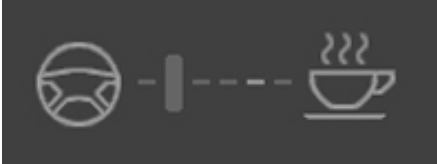
Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

# Driving Aids

## System Display

When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue warnings if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See (page 66).

The alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar.



E131358

Alertness level is fine, no rest required.



E131359

Alertness level is critical, indicating that you should take a rest as soon as it is safe to do so.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow and then finally red when a rest break must be taken.

- Green: No rest required.
- Yellow: First (temporary) warning.
- Red: Second warning.

Your alertness level will be shown in grey if:

- the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings
- your vehicle speed drops below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

## Resetting the System

You can reset the system by:

- switching the ignition off and on
- stopping your vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.







## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (if

Equipped)

## Lane Keeping Alert





### Principle of Operation

#### WARNINGS

-  The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.
-  At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.
-  If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.
-  The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings such as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.
-  In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.
-  The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

# Driving Aids

## WARNINGS

-  The system may not operate in areas during roadwork construction.
-  The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.
-  Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.
-  If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system may assist you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.

**Note:** The system may not operate during hard braking or acceleration and when you are intentionally steering your vehicle.

**Note:** The system will operate with a minimum of one tracked lane marking.

**Note:** The system will only operate above vehicle speeds of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

The sensor is located behind the interior mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to alert you of unintentional lane drifting at high speeds.

The system will automatically detect and track the lane markings on the road. If the system detects that your vehicle is unintentionally drifting toward the lane markings, a warning will be shown in the display. There is also a warning given in the form of a vibration felt through the steering wheel.

## Using Lane Keeping Alert

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** When you switch the system off, a warning indicator will remain illuminated in the information display. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).

**Note:** The system status and settings will remain unchanged when you switch the ignition on and off.



E132099

Switch the system on and off using the button on the direction indicator stalk.

Press the button twice to switch the system on. Press the button once to switch the system off.

### Setting the Steering Wheel Vibration Level

The system has three intensity levels which you can set using the information display. See (page 66).

### Setting the System Sensitivity

You can adjust how quickly the system warns you. The system has two sensitivity levels which you can set using the information display. See (page 66).

# Driving Aids

## System Warnings



E132651

A column of lane markings are displayed on either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green: The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Red: Your vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. Take immediate safe action to reposition your vehicle.
- Gray: The relevant lane boundary will be suppressed.

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- You turn the direction indicator for that side of your vehicle on.
- If you apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- Your vehicle speed is outside the operating limits.
- If there is an anti-lock brake or stability control intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

If the lane markings in the display turn red or you feel a vibration through the steering wheel you must take immediate and safe action to align your vehicle. Correct any unintended lane drift immediately.

## Lane Keeping Aid

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** The system does not automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** When you switch the system on, this will automatically turn lane keeping alert on.



E132099

Switch the system on and off using the button on the indicator stalk.

Press the button three times to switch the system on. Press the button again to switch the system off.

### Setting the System Sensitivity

You can adjust how quickly the system warns you. The system has two sensitivity levels which you can set using the information display. See (page 66).

# Driving Aids

## System Warnings



E132651

A column of lane markings are displayed on either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green: The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Yellow: The system will automatically apply a steering torque to align your vehicle path and correct any unintended lane drift.
- Red: Your vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. The steering wheel will give a vibration warning. Take immediate safe action to reposition your vehicle.

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- You turn the direction indicator for that side of your vehicle on.
- If you apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- Your vehicle speed is outside the operating limits.
- If there is an anti-lock brake or stability control intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

**Note:** You can override the system at any time during its operation by turning the steering wheel.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM (If Equipped)

### Blind Spot Information System

#### WARNINGS



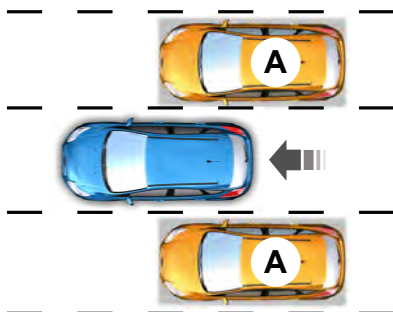
The system will not prevent a crash or contact with other vehicles or objects. It is designed to provide a warning to assist you in detecting vehicles in the blind spot zones. It will not detect obstacles, pedestrians, motorcyclists or cyclists.



Do not use the system as a replacement for using the mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. You should only use the system as an aid. It is not a replacement for careful driving.

The system is a convenience feature that assists you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 10 feet (3 meters) beyond the rear bumper. The system is designed to alert you if other vehicles enter the blind spot zone when driving.

# Driving Aids



E124788

## Using the System

The system displays a yellow warning indicator located in the exterior mirrors. It will dim when the ambient light decreases.



E124736

**Note:** Both warning indicators will illuminate briefly when you switch the ignition on to confirm that the system is operational.

**Note:** If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the system only operates when you move the transmission selector lever to sport, drive or neutral.

The system only operates when your vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h). The system will temporarily switch off when you select reverse gear.

## System Detection and Alerts

### WARNINGS



Do not place items such as bumper stickers in this area.

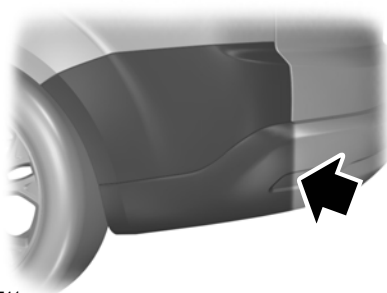


Repairs to these areas using body filler will affect the performance of the system.

The system is designed to trigger the alert for vehicles that enter the blind spot zone from the rear or merge from the side. Vehicles that you pass or vehicles that enter the blind spot zone from the front, will only trigger the alert after the vehicle has remained in the blind spot zone for a short period of time.

**Note:** Vehicles that pass through the blind spot zone quickly (typically less than 2 seconds) will not trigger the alert.

The system consists of two radar sensors each located behind the rear wheels, hidden behind the bumpers.



E124741

## Detection Limitations

There may be instances where the system will not always detect vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zone.

# Driving Aids

Instances which may cause non-detection:

- Debris build up on the rear bumper panels in the area of the sensors.
- Certain maneuvering of vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind spot zone at high speed.
- Severe weather conditions.
- Several vehicles passing through the blind spot zone following each other closely.

## False Alerts

**Note:** *False alerts are temporary and will self correct.*

There may be certain instances when the system will alert with no vehicle present in the blind spot zone.

Circumstances where false alerts may occur:

- Road guardrails.
- Freeway concrete walls.
- Construction areas.
- Sharp turns around a building.
- Bushes and trees.
- Coming to a stop with a vehicle very close behind.

## Switching the System Off and On

You can switch the system off and on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

When you switch the system off no further alerts will be received. The warning indicator in the instrument cluster will illuminate. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).

**Note:** *The system status will remain the same until you manually change it.*

## Detection Errors

**Note:** *The warning indicator in the exterior mirror will not illuminate.*

If the system senses a fault on either sensor, the warning indicator in the instrument cluster will illuminate and remain on. A message will be shown in the display to confirm the fault and indicate which sensor is affected.

## Blocked Sensor

### WARNINGS



Prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and issuing a warning, the number of missed objects will increase.



The sensors may not detect vehicles in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

**Note:** *Keep the rear bumper area surrounding the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow.*

If a sensor becomes blocked the system performance may degrade. A blocked sensor message may be displayed.

The system will automatically return to normal operation after one of the following conditions have been met:

- Two other vehicles have been detected on both sides.
- You switch the ignition off and on.

If the sensor remains blocked after you have switched the ignition off and on, the system will detect the blockage again and alert you.

# Driving Aids

## Trailer Towing False Alerts


If your vehicle has a trailer tow module approved by us, the system will detect a connected trailer and turn off. A confirmation message will be shown in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 72). The warning indicator in the instrument cluster will illuminate. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).


**Note:** *If your vehicle has a trailer tow module not approved by us, the system may not correctly detect a connected trailer. Switch the system off to avoid false alerts. See **Information Displays** (page 66).*


## ACTIVE CITY STOP (If Equipped)


### Principle of Operation

#### WARNINGS


 You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


 To achieve full system performance you must break in the braking system. See **Breaking-In** (page 169). Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


 If the system applies the brakes and the engine stops the hazard warning flashers will automatically turn on. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.


 The system does not react to cyclists, motorcyclists, pedestrians, animals or vehicles that are driving in a different direction. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


#### WARNINGS


 The system does not operate during harsh acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.


 The system may not operate during cold or severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, heavy rain and spray can influence the system. Keep the hood free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 The system may not operate when driving around sharp curves. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

 The system may not operate correctly if you replace the windshield with a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in front of the sensor. Failure to adhere to this warning may lead to an accident or injury.

 The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflections. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 The system will not operate correctly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstructions, for example, bird droppings, insects, snow or ice. Failure to adhere to this warning may lead to an accident or injury.

 When you switch the ignition on the sensor transmits a laser beam. Never look directly into the sensor. There is a risk of eye injury.

The sensor is on the rear of the interior mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to decide when to intervene.



# Driving Aids

The system operates at speeds below approximately 50 km/h by applying the brakes if it detects that a crash is likely. If the system applies the brakes a message will appear in the information display.

The system may reduce the risk of a low speed crash into another vehicle. It also helps reduce impact damage or may avoid the crash completely.

**Note:** You must depress the brake pedal to obtain full braking force.

## Switching the System Off and On

You can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 66).

**Note:** The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.

In certain situations we recommend that you switch the system off, for example:

- Driving off-road when objects may cover the windshield.
- Driving through a car wash facility.

## Eco Mode

This system assists you in driving more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds while driving.

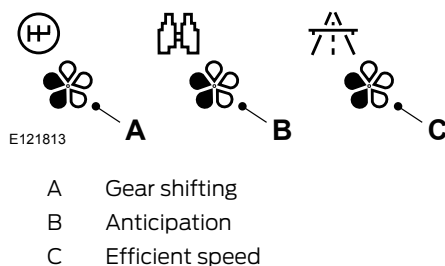
The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your vehicle's overall fuel economy.

**Note:** These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving habits, but also influenced by many other factors such as short trips and cold starts.

**Note:** Frequent short trips, where the engine does not fully warm up, will also increase fuel consumption

The system is accessed using the information display control. See (page 66).

## Type 1



## Gear shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions to improve fuel consumption.

## Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles to avoid the need for heavy braking or acceleration to improve fuel economy.

## Efficient speed

Reduce your cruising speed on open roads to improve economy. Higher speeds use more fuel.

## Resetting Eco Mode







Reset the average fuel consumption by using the information display control.

**Note:** New values may take a short time to calculate

# Load Carrying

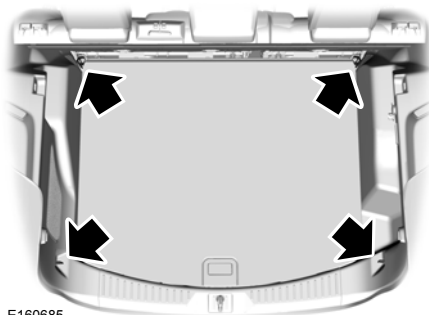
## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNINGS

-  Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.
-  Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.
-  Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.
-  Do not drive with the luggage compartment or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.
-  Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 213).
-  Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

**Note:** When loading long objects in to your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



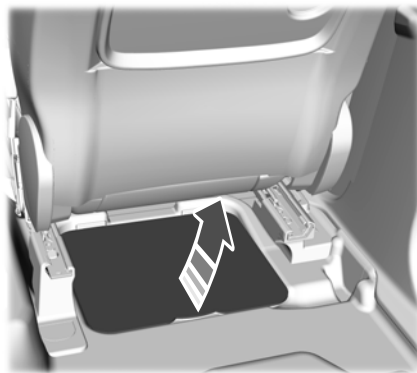
E160685

## Luggage Retention Nets

**Note:** Your vehicle does not have luggage retention net anchor points fitted behind the first or second row seats.

## REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

### Passenger Compartment Floor



E159047

The under floor storage compartment is located behind the front right-hand seat.

## Cargo Management System

The system is located in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

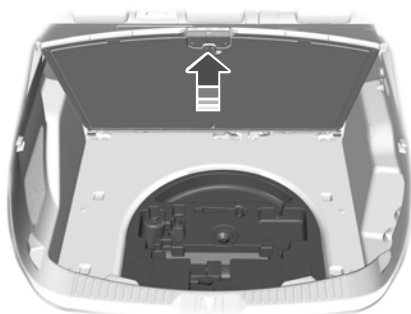
# Load Carrying

## Vehicles with Temporary Spare Wheel



E159408

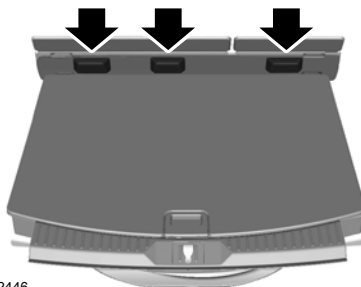
## Vehicles with Temporary Mobility Kit



E159043

## Adjustable Load Floor

### Vehicles with Temporary Spare Wheel



E142446

The front of the load floor can be placed either on (for high position) or below (for low position) the ledges behind the rear seats.

### Vehicles with Temporary Mobility Kit

The front of the load floor can be placed either on the ledge behind the rear seats (for high position) or on the black cargo insulator surface (for low position).

## LUGGAGE COVERS

### WARNINGS



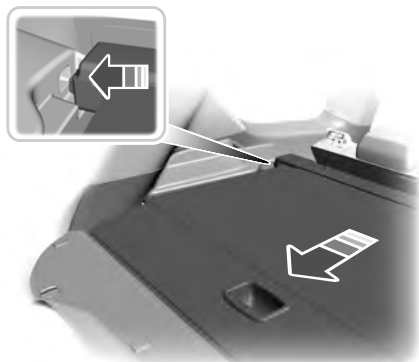
Make sure that the posts are correctly latched in mounting features. The cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or crash if it is not securely installed.



Do not place any objects on the cargo shade. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of your vehicle in a sudden stop or crash.

Use the cargo shade to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.

# Load Carrying



E159183

Insert the ends of the cargo shade into the mounting features located behind the rear seat on the rear trim panels to install the shade.

To operate the cargo shade:

1. Pull the rear edge of the cargo shade rearward until it clicks into place.
2. To close the cargo shade, tap on the rear edge and it will slide forward.

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

### WARNINGS



If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.



Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

### WARNINGS



When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack, is:

- 165 pounds (75 kilograms) for vehicles without a moonroof
- 132 pounds (60 kilograms) for vehicles with a moonroof.

**Note:** *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

# Towing

## TOWING A TRAILER

### WARNINGS



Only use the Ford approved trailer wiring kit (including the trailer wiring module) when towing with your vehicle. Using generic trailer wiring kits may prevent the correct operation of the rear parking sensors (where fitted) and could damage the electrical systems of your vehicle.



Aftermarket load levelling kits or weight distribution hitches are not suitable for use on the Ford approved towbar.



**See Information label on the towbar.**



Do not exceed the maximum permissible nose weight, e.g. vertical weight on the tow ball. See

**Recommended Towing Weights** (page 164). Failure to adhere to this warning could result in loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle(s) of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, the load in your trailer should be placed toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependant on the quality of the trailer.

In high altitude regions above 1,000 m, the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight must be reduced by 10% for every additional 1,000 m.

**Note:** *The electrical system is not suitable for towing trailers with more than one rear fog lamp.*

## Ford standard duty towpack

Ford approved standard duty towpack is specially designed to comply with Australian Design Rules (ADR) and correctly interface with the body structure. Use only the Ford approved towpack when towing and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. See your Ford dealer or a reliable trailer dealer if you require assistance.

Read and follow the instructions included with the towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications of towing equipment.

The towpack consist of:

- Maximum 900 kg rated towbar and gooseneck
- Ford approved trailer wiring kit
- Ford approved towball

## Steep Gradients

### WARNING



The anti-lock braking system does not control the overrun brake on the trailer. Failure to take care may result in loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

# Towing

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL (if

Equipped)

### WARNING



Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

**Note:** This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it when it begins.

**Note:** This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.

**Note:** In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability. If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 72). Slow your vehicle down, pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 160).

You can switch this feature off in the information display. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

## RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

**Note:** Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.

**Note:** There are legal limits for maximum towing weights. This may vary according to the region in which your vehicle is operated. Check the local laws and regulations before towing a trailer.

Powertrain	Maximum combined vehicle and trailer weight lb (kg)	Rear axle load limit lb (kg)	Maximum Trailer Weight lb (kg)
1.5L GTDI 2WD	8098 (3673)	2370 (1075)	3307 (1500)
1.5L GTDI AWD	7008 (3179)	2535 (1150)	2646 (1200)
2.0L GTDI AWD	7008 (3179)	2535 (1150)	2646 (1200)
2.0L DW10F AWD	7893 (3580)	2535 (1150)	3307 (1500)

# Towing

## ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,600 km.
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

### Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

It is recommended that you load your trailer so 10% of the trailer weight is on the tow ball. You must not exceed the maximum permissible trailer nose weight. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 164).

### Safety Chains

**Note:** *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

## Trailer Brakes

### WARNING



Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

**The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.**

**Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 750 kg when loaded.**

## Trailer Lamps

### WARNING



Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

# Towing

## Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

## When Towing a Trailer

- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have travelled 80 km.
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the gearshift in position **P** to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the cruise control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The cruise control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.

- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:
  - Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
  - Set your vehicle parking brake.
  - Place the automatic transmission in position **P**.
  - Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. (Chocks not included with vehicle.)

## Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

**Note:** Disconnect the wiring to the trailer **before** backing the trailer into the water.

**Note:** Reconnect the wiring to the trailer **after** the trailer is removed from the water.

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 centimetres) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.


Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.



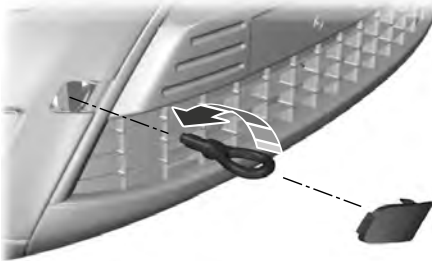
# Towing

## TOWING POINTS

### WARNING

 The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

### Front Towing Eye

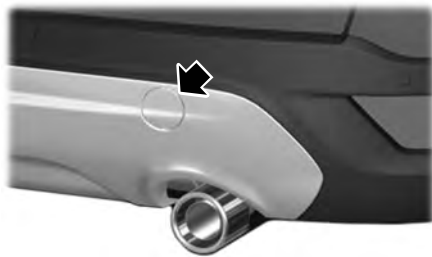


E99490

Space is provided in the spare wheel well. You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

Remove the cover and install the towing eye.

### Rear Towing Eye









E152139

**Note:** If your vehicle has a tow bar, you cannot install the towing eye at the rear of your vehicle.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### All Vehicles



### WARNINGS

-  You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.
-  If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.
-  The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering.
-  Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.
-  Do not use a rigid tow bar on the front towing eye.
-  When towing your vehicle you must select neutral.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the towed vehicle.

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

### WARNINGS

-  If a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h) and a distance of 12 miles (20 kilometers) is to be exceeded the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.
-  It is recommended not to tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move your vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 12 mph (20 km/h) or further than 12 miles (20 kilometers).

# Towing

---

## WARNINGS



Do not tow your vehicle backward.



In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.



Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 32°F (0°C).

---

# Driving Hints

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

#### WARNING



New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 miles (500 kilometers). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

### Brakes and Clutch

#### WARNING



Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 miles (150 kilometers) in town and for the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers) on freeways.

### Engine

#### WARNING



Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

### Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 2000 miles (3000 kilometers), you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -25°C.

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

#### WARNINGS



Drive through water in an emergency only and not as part of normal driving.



Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In an emergency, you can drive your vehicle through water to a maximum depth of 8 inches (200 millimeters) and at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h). You must take extra care when driving through flowing water.

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop your vehicle. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Depress the brake pedal lightly to check that the brakes are functioning correctly.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that your vehicle's lamps are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.

## FLOOR MATS

#### WARNINGS



Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

# Driving Hints

## WARNINGS



Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.



Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.



Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.



Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.



Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

# Roadside Emergencies

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel.

Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again to turn them off.

**Note:** *If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*

**Note:** *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the hazard warning flashers may flash if you brake heavily.*

## FIRST AID KIT (If Equipped)

Space is provided in the rear underfloor storage compartment. See **Rear Under Floor Storage** (page 160).

## WARNING TRIANGLE

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

## FUEL SHUTOFF

### WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

**Note:** *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

**Note:** *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

# Roadside Emergencies

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### WARNINGS



Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.



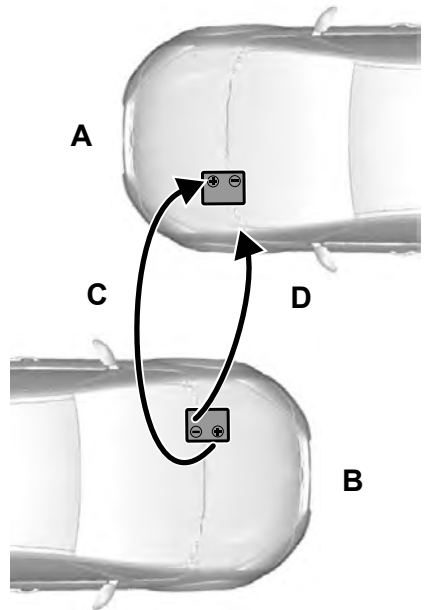
Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



Always use booster cables with insulated clamps and adequate size cable.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery from your vehicle's electrical system.

## To Connect the Booster Cables



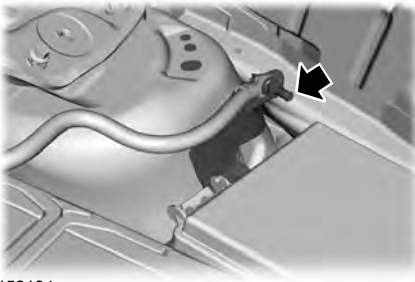
E102925

- A Flat battery vehicle
- B Booster battery vehicle
- C Positive connection cable
- D Negative connection cable

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C).

# Roadside Emergencies

---



E152134

4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground connection of vehicle A (cable D).

## WARNINGS



Do not connect directly to the negative (-) terminal of the flat battery.



Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

---

## To Start the Engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

## WARNING



Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

---

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

# Fuses

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

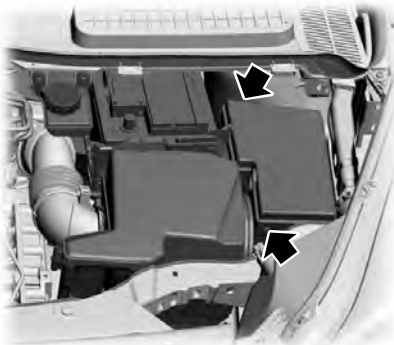
### Pre-Fuse Box



E152422

Your vehicle has a pre-fuse box located in the engine compartment attached to the positive battery post. This box contains several high current fuses. If replacement of these high current fuses is required, see an authorized dealer.

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E152423

### WARNINGS



Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



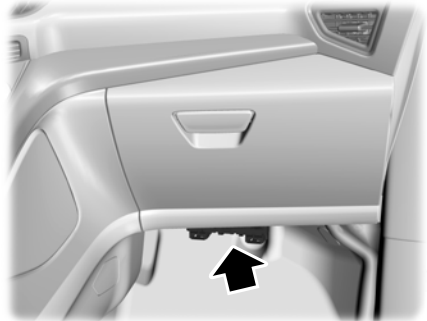
To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the engine compartment fuse box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The engine compartment fuse box has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 192).

Lift the release lever at the rear of the cover to remove it.

### Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E159113

The fuse box is located below the glove box.



# Fuses

## Luggage Compartment Fuse Box

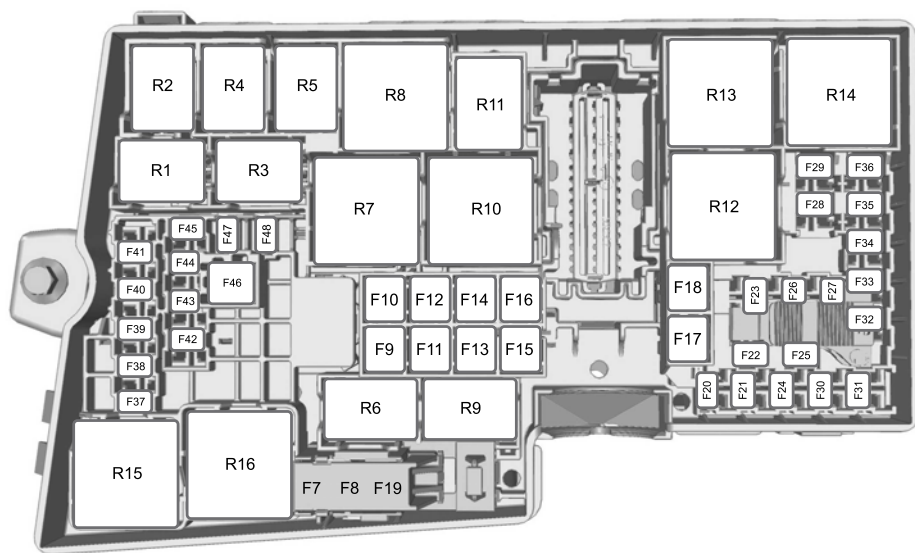


E152425

The fuse box is located in the luggage compartment behind the passenger side wheel well. Remove the fuse panel cover to gain access to the fuses.

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E157389

# Fuses

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F1	-	Not used.
F2	-	Not used.
F3	-	Not used.
F4	-	Not used.
F5	-	Not used.
F6	-	Not used.
F7	40A**	Anti-lock brake system. Electronic stability program.
F8	30A**	Electronic stability program.
F9	20A**	Headlamp washer.
F10	40A**	Blower motor.
F11	30A**	Voltage quality module. Body control module.
F12	30A**	Powertrain control module.
F13	30A**	Starter relay.
F14	40A**	Right-hand heated windshield element.
F15	20A**	Cigar lighter. Auxiliary power points.
F16	40A**	Left-hand heated windshield element.
F17	20A**	Auxiliary heater.
F18	-	Not used.
F19	5A*	Anti-lock brake system. Electronic stability program.
F20	15A*	Horn.
F21	5A*	Brake lamps.
F22	15A*	Battery monitor system.

## Fuses

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F23	5A*	Relay coils.
F24	5A*	Lighting control.
F25	-	Not used.
F26	5A*	Engine control relay coil feed - vehicles with a gasoline engine.
F26	15A*	Engine control relay coil feed - vehicles with a diesel engine. Transmission control module - vehicles with a diesel engine.
F27	15A*	Air conditioning clutch.
F28	5A*	Adaptive cruise control - vehicles with start-stop.
F29	25A*	Rear window defroster.
F30	-	Not used.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	15A*	Engine control module.
F33	10A*	Engine control module.
F34	10A*	Engine control module.
F35	15A*	Engine control module.
F36	5A*	Active grill shutters.
F37	5A*	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator feed.
F38	5A*	Engine control module . Transmission control module.
F39	5A*	Headlamps. Headlamp leveling.
F40	5A*	Electronic power assist steering.
F41	20A*	Body control module.

## Fuses

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F42	15A*	Rear window wiper.
F43	15A*	Headlamps.
F44	5A*	Adaptive cruise control - vehicles without start-stop.
F45	10A*	Heated washer nozzle.
F46	40A**	Autowipers.
F47	-	Not used.
F48	15A*	Diesel particulate filter vaporizer.

\*Mini fuses

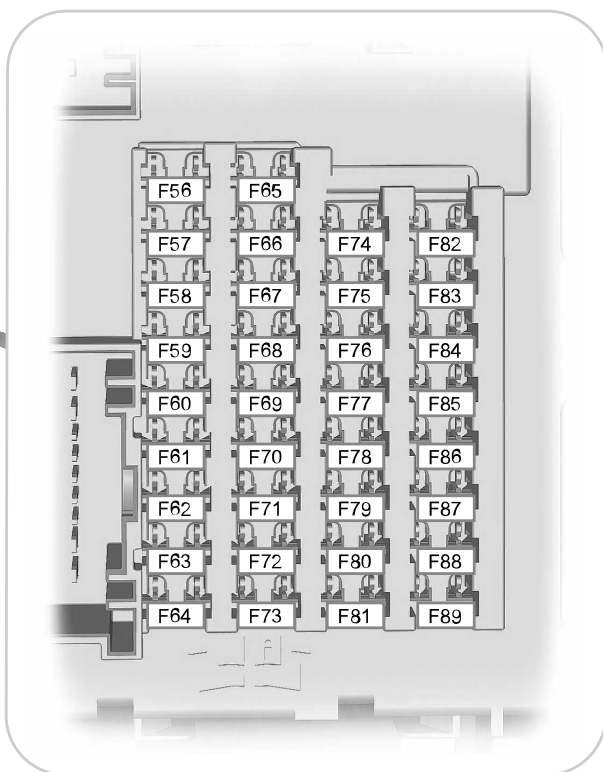
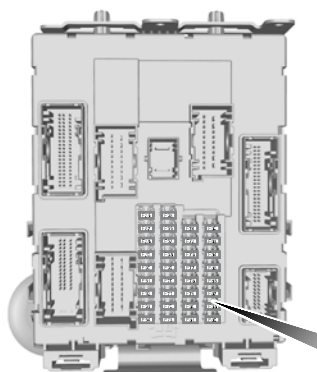
\*\*Cartridge fuses

Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Not used.
R2	Horn.
R3	Diesel particulate filter vaporizer.
R4	Not used.
R5	Not used.
R6	Not used.
R7	Heated windshield.
R8	Not used.
R9	Headlamp washer.
R10	Starter motor.
R11	Air conditioning clutch.
R12	Cooling fan.
R13	Blower motor.

# Fuses

Relay	Circuits switched
R14	Engine control module.
R15	Heated rear window.
R16	Ignition.

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E129926

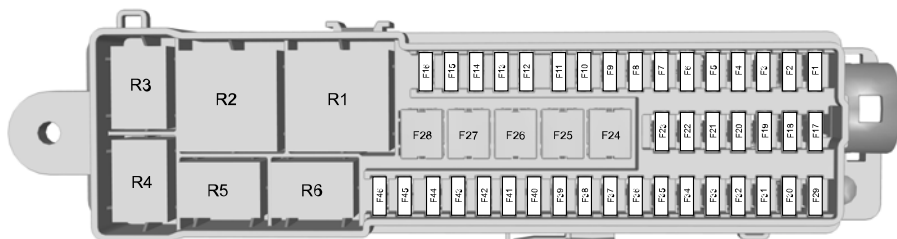
# Fuses

<b>Fuse</b>	<b>Fuse rating</b>	<b>Circuits protected</b>
F56	20A	Fuel pump.
F57	-	Not used.
F58	-	Not used.
F59	5A	Passive anti-theft transceiver.
F60	10A	Interior lighting. Driver door switch pack. Glove box lamp. Overhead console switch bank.
F61	-	Not used.
F62	5A	Autowipers. Auto-dimming interior mirror.
F63	10A	Adaptive cruise control - front sensing module.
F64	-	Not used.
F65	10A	Liftgate release.
F66	-	Not used.
F67	7.5A	SYNC module. Front control/display interface module. Global positioning system module.
F68	15A	Electric steering column lock.
F69	5A	Instrument cluster.
F70	-	Not used.
F71	10A	Heating control head - manual air conditioning. Duel electronic automatic temperature control.
F72	7.5A	Steering wheel module.
F73	7.5A	Data link connector. Battery backup sounder.
F74	15A	High beam.
F75	15A	Rear fog lamp.
F76	10A	Reversing lamps.
F77	20A	Windshield washer pump.

## Fuses

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F78	5A	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch.
F79	15A	Audio unit. Navigation DVD player. Touch screen. Hazard flasher switch. Door lock switch.
F80	20A	Moonroof.
F81	5A	Radio frequency receiver. Interior motion sensor.
F82	20A	Windshield washer pump.
F83	20A	Central locking system.
F84	-	Not used.
F85	7.5A	Ignition switch.
F86	10A	Air bag module. Occupant classification system. Passenger air bag deactivation indicator.
F87	-	Not used.
F88	-	Not used.
F89	-	Not used.

## Luggage Compartment Fuse Box



E129927

# Fuses

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F1	5A	Hands-free liftgate actuation module.
F2	10A	Keyless vehicle module.
F3	5A	Keyless vehicle door handles.
F4	25A	Front left door control unit.
F5	25A	Front right door control unit.
F6	25A	Rear left door control unit.
F7	25A	Rear right door control unit.
F8	-	Not used.
F9	25A	Driver seat motor.
F10	-	Not used.
F11	5A	Rear ignition relay coil feed.
F12	10A	Climate control - vehicles with start-stop.
F13	5A	Instrument cluster - vehicles with start-stop.
F14	7.5A	Information and entertainment display. SYNC module. Global positioning system module - vehicles with start-stop.
F15	15A	Audio unit - vehicles with start-stop.
F16	-	Not used.
F17	-	Not used.
F18	-	Not used.
F19	-	Not used.
F20	-	Not used.
F21	-	Not used.
F22	-	Not used.
F23	-	Not used.
F24	30A	AC/DC auxiliary power points.
F24	20A	Rear auxiliary power points.



## Fuses

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F25	25A	Power liftgate.
F26	40A	Accessories. Trailer tow module.
F27	20A	Luggage compartment auxiliary power points.
F28	-	Not used.
F29	5A	Blind spot monitor. Front camera sensor. Adaptive cruise control. Rear view camera with park assist. Voltage quality module ignition signal.
F30	5A	Parking aid button.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	5A	DC/AC auxiliary power point ignition signal.
F33	-	Not used.
F34	20A	Driver heated seat.
F35	20A	Passenger heated seat.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	-	Not used.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.
F41	-	Not used.
F42	-	Not used.
F43	-	Not used.
F44	-	Not used.
F45	-	Not used.
F46	10A	Blind spot monitor. Front camera sensor. Adaptive cruise control. Rear view camera with park assist - vehicles with start-stop.

# Fuses

Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Ignition switch.
R2	Not used.
R3	Not used.
R4	Not used.
R5	Not used.
R6	Not used.

## CHANGING A FUSE

### WARNINGS



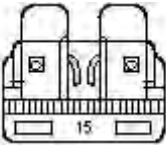
Do not modify the electrical system of your vehicle in any way. Have repairs to the electrical system and the replacement of relays and high current fuses carried out by an authorized dealer.



Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off before attempting to change a fuse.



Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E142430

If electrical components in your vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. A break in the fuse wire will indicate a blown fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. Authorized repairers are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly, with a wide range of highly specialized tools.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following checks.

### WARNINGS



Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.



Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

## Daily Checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

## Check When Refueling

- Brake fluid level.
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 192).

- Tire pressures (when cold). See **Technical Specifications** (page 212).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 204).

## Monthly Checks

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 190).
- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 191).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 212).

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



E142457

1. Pull the hood release lever.
2. Slightly lift the hood.

# Maintenance



E142458

3. Move the catch to the right to release the hood.



E87786

4. Open the hood and support it with the hood strut.

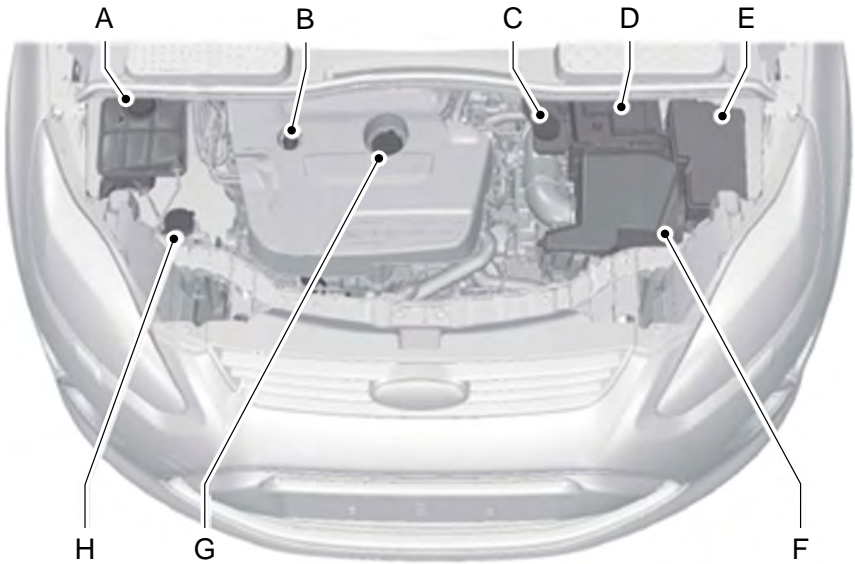
## Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8-12 in (20-30 cm).

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

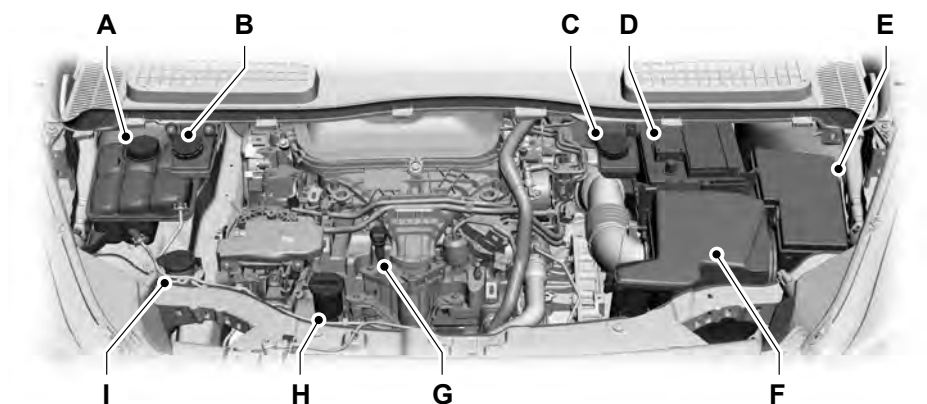


E146022

- A Engine coolant reservoir
- B Engine oil dipstick
- C Brake fluid reservoir
- D Battery
- E Power distribution box
- F Air filter assembly
- G Engine oil filler cap
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



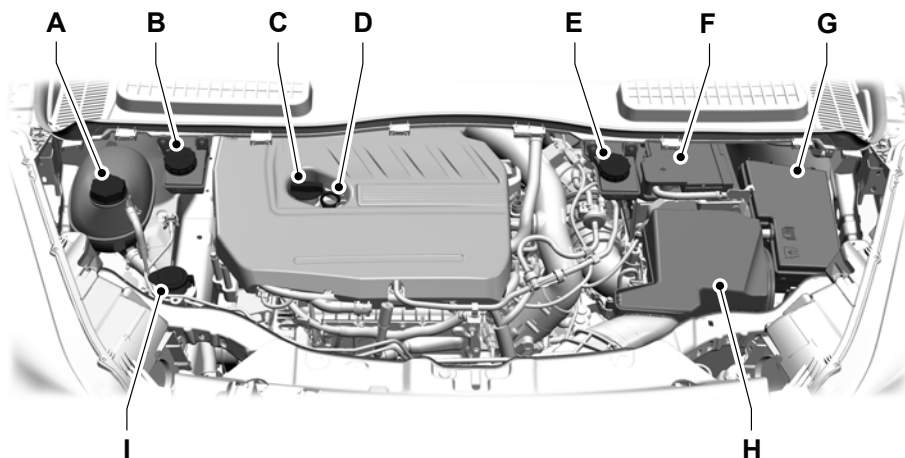
E152530

- A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 191).
- B Brake fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)\*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 192).
- C Brake fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)\*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 192).
- D Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 192).
- E Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 174).
- F Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
- G Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 190).
- H Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 190).
- I Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 192).

\* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



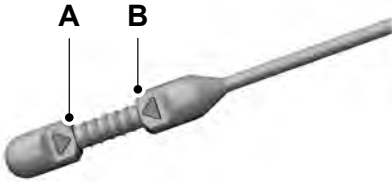
E190470

- A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 191).
- B Brake fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)\*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 192).
- C Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 190).
- D Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 190).
- E Brake fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)\*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 192).
- F Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 192).
- G Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 174).
- H Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
- I Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 192).

\* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

# Maintenance

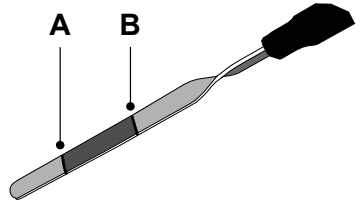
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



E188072

- A Minimum.  
B Maximum.

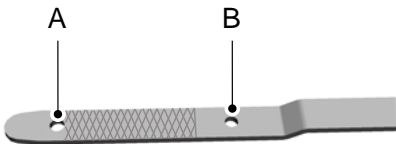
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



E205005

- A Minimum.  
B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



E169062

- A Minimum.  
B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Switch off the engine and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately.

**Note:** Check the oil level before starting the engine.

**Note:** Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

**Note:** Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they may damage the engine.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3000 miles (5000 kilometers).



# Maintenance

## Adding Oil

### WARNINGS



Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.



Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add oil that meets Ford specifications.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

### WARNINGS



Do not dispose of engine coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.



Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



E169064

Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add coolant immediately.

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C).

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.

## Adding Engine Coolant

### WARNINGS



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.



Only add coolant when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

# Maintenance

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

**Note:** Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's Warranty.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
2. Add engine coolant to the MAX mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

**Note:** Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, such as corrosion, overheating or freezing.

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

**Note:** The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.

For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

### WARNING



For vehicles with start-stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

**Note:** Where applicable you must reprogram the audio system using the keycode.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 185).

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

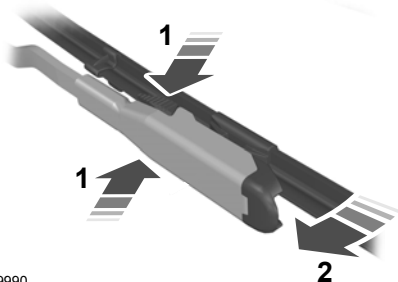
Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

The wiper arms can be manually moved when the ignition is off. This allows for ease of blade replacement and cleaning under the blades.

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



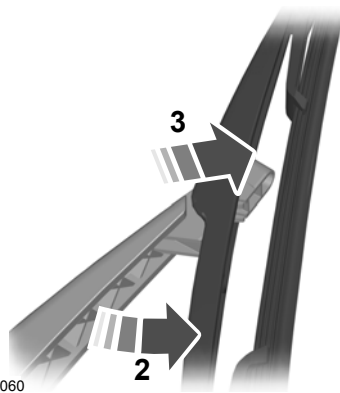
E129990

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.

To change the rear blades, do the following:

1. Lift the wiper arm.



E130060

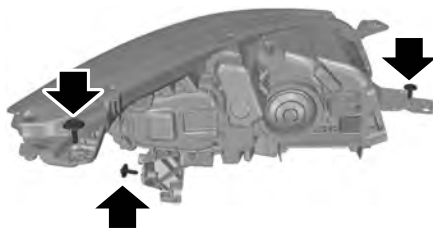
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

## REMOVING A HEADLAMP



E159160

# Maintenance

1. Make sure the lighting control is in the off position and open the hood.
2. Remove the three screws from the headlamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the headlamp assembly as far as possible toward the front of your vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Carefully lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

## CHANGING A BULB

### WARNINGS



Switch the lamps and the ignition off.



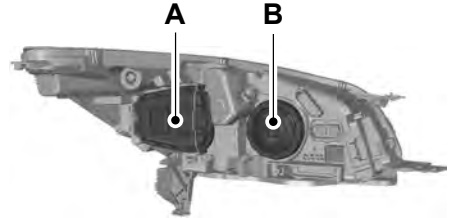
Let the bulb cool down before removing it.

**Note:** Only fit bulbs of the correct specification.

**Note:** The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

## Headlamp

### Type 1

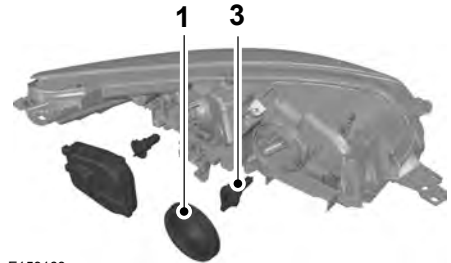


E159161

A Low beam headlamp

B High beam headlamp

## Headlamp High Beam



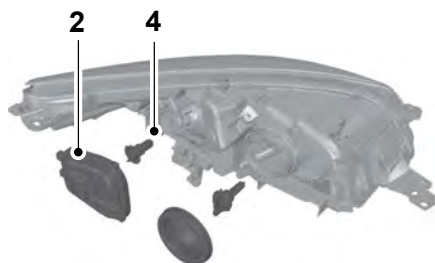
E159163

1. Remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and pull it straight out to remove it.

**Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

# Maintenance

## Headlamp Low Beam

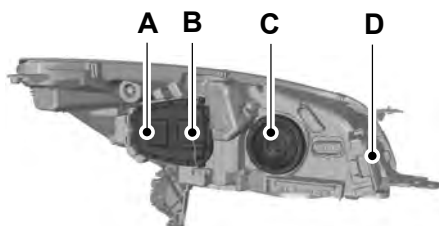


E159179

1. Release the metal retaining clip.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove the bulb.

**Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

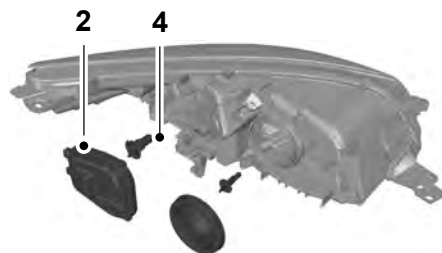
### Type 2



E159162

- A Low beam headlamp
- B High beam headlamp
- C Fixed bending light
- D Park position

## Headlamp High Beam

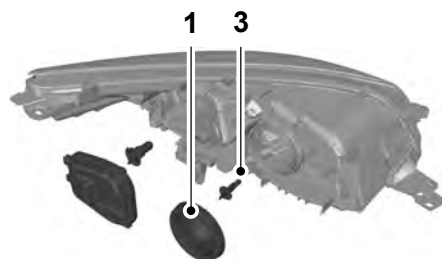


E159180

1. Release the metal retaining clip.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove the bulb.

**Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

### Headlamp Fixed Bending Light Bulb



E159164

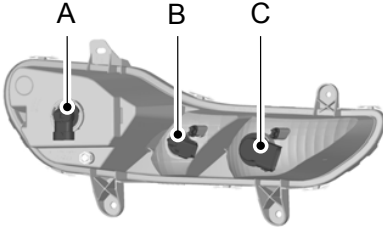
1. Remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and pull it straight out to remove it.

**Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

# Maintenance

## Direction Indicator, Front Fog Lamp and Position Lamp

**Note:** The position and direction indicator bulbs are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.



E165225

- A Fog lamp
- B Park lamp
- C Direction indicator lamp



E142798

1. Turn the steering wheel to full lock.
2. Remove the retaining clips from the front wheel splash shield to gain access to the lamp assembly.



E165226

3. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.

## Side Repeater



E72263

1. Carefully remove the side repeater.

# Maintenance



E72291

2. Remove the bulb holder.
3. Remove the bulb.

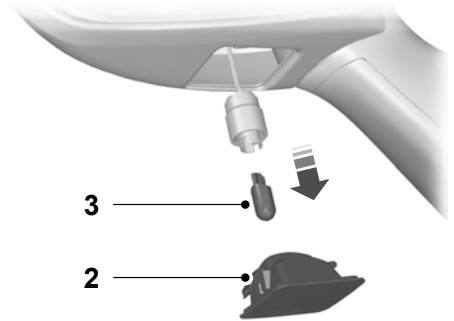
## Approach Lamp

**Note:** Position the mirror glass as far inward as possible.



E72264

1. Insert a screwdriver into the gap between the mirror housing and the mirror glass and release the metal retaining clip.



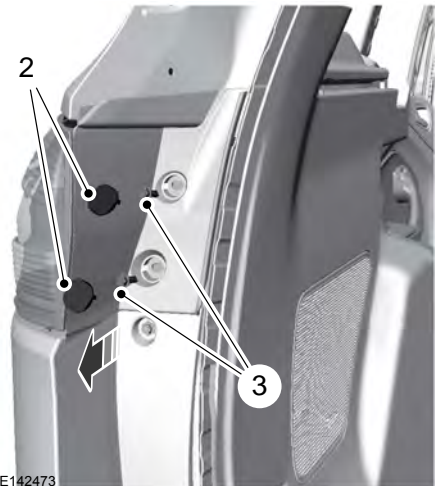
E72265

2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.

## Rear Lamps

### Type 1

#### Direction Indicator, Tail and Brake Lamp



E142473

1. Make sure the lighting control is in the off position and open the liftgate.

# Maintenance

2. Remove the two bolt covers using a standard flat tip screwdriver.
3. Remove the two bolts from the lamp assembly.
4. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from your vehicle.

## Type 2

### Direction Indicator

Follow the same procedure as type 1 to remove the direction indicator bulb.

**Note:** The tail and brake lamp bulbs are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.

### Reversing Lamp



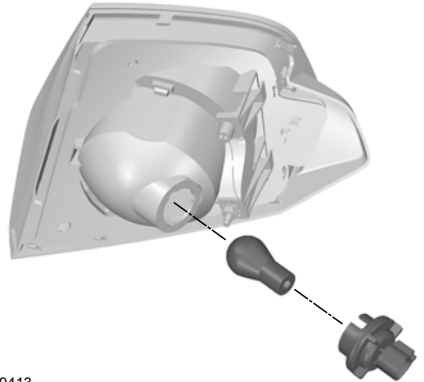
E159417

1. Insert a suitable object to pry open the trim panel.



E99412

2. Remove the nut from the lamp assembly.
3. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from your vehicle.



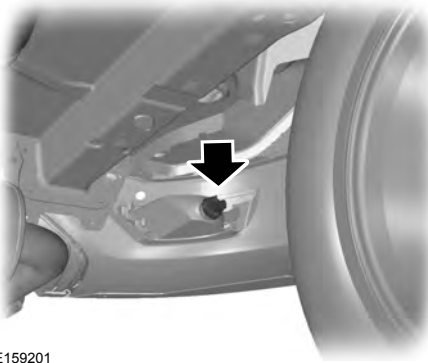
E99413

4. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it counterclockwise and remove it.



# Maintenance

## Rear Fog Lamp



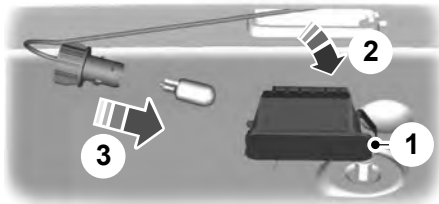
E159201

1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and pull it straight out to remove it.

## Central High Mounted Brake Lamp

These are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.

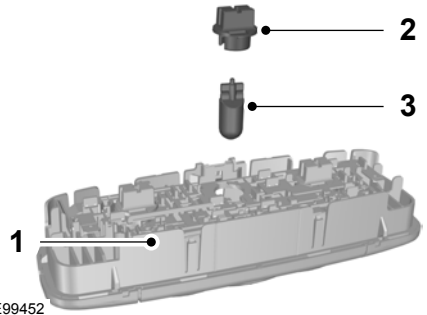
## License Plate Lamp



E72789

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it.

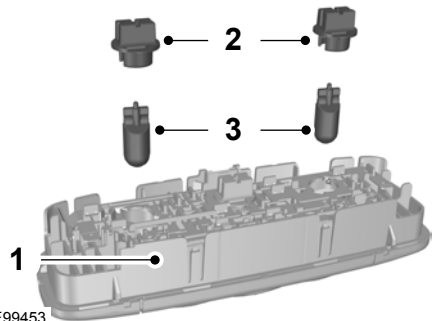
## Interior lamp



E99452

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

## Reading lamps



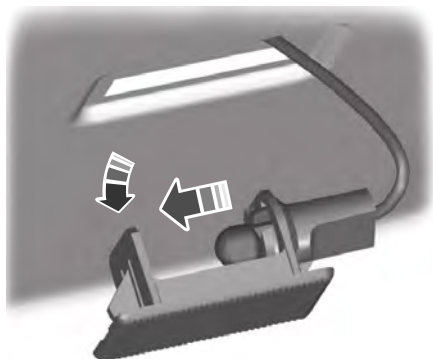
E99453

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

# Maintenance

## Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell Lamp and Liftgate Lamp

1. Carefully prize out the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.



E72784

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Function	Trade number
Headlamps high beam (Halogen)	H15
* Headlamps high beam (HID)	H1
Headlamp low beam (Halogen)	H7
* Headlamp low beam (HID)	D3S
Static bending	H7
* Parking lamp - front (HI Series)	LED
Parking lamp - front (Low Series)	W5W
Direction indicator lamp - front (HI Series)	WY21W
Direction indicator lamp - front (Low Series)	WY21W
Fog lamps	H10 (9145)
Tail and brake lamp	PY21/5W
Direction indicator lamp - rear	T20
Reversing lamp	921

# Maintenance

---

Function	Trade number
License plate lamp	W5W
* High-mount brake lamp	LED
* Interior lamps	LED

\* To replace these lamps - see an authorized dealer.

To replace all instrument panel lamps - see an authorized dealer

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

We recommend that you wash your vehicle regularly with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a neutral pH car shampoo.

Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and can cause spotting on painted surfaces.

Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.

Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.

Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits as they can cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork and trim over time.

Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface. If these substances come in to contact with your vehicle, wash them off as soon as possible.

### Using a Car Wash

#### WARNINGS



If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield.



Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.

Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.

Remove any exterior accessories, including the antenna, before using an automatic car wash.

## Cleaning the Headlamps

#### WARNINGS



Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.



Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

## Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces.

Do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than recommended.

Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.

## Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

## Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

**Note:** Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

## Seatbelts

**Note:** Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

**Note:** Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.

# Vehicle Care

---

**Note:** Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

## Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

**Note:** Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

## Rear Windows

**Note:** Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

**Note:** Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

## CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.

**Note:** Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

**Note:** If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

**Note:** Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

**Note:** Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

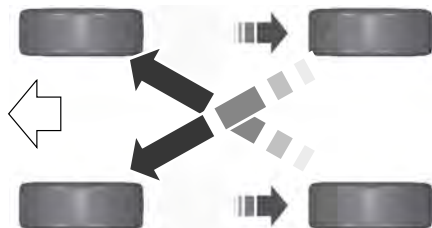
**Note:** Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

**Note:** If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.

## TIRE CARE

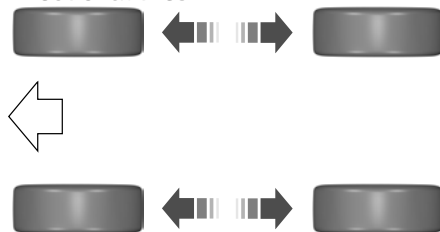
Front wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram).

### Non-directional tires



E142547

### Directional tires



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km and 10,000 km.

### WARNING



Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

## USING SNOW CHAINS

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).



Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Technical Specifications** (page 212).

# Wheels and Tires

## WARNINGS



If your vehicle has wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

**Note:** The anti-lock braking system will continue to operate normally.

Only use small link snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

## Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 135).

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

### Vehicles with a Spare Wheel

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is different to the other road wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

## WARNINGS



Drive the shortest possible distances.



Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

## WARNINGS



Do not carry out any tyre repairs on a spare wheel.



Do not drive through an automatic car wash.



If you are unsure what type of spare wheel you have do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



Only fit snow chains to specified tyres. See **Technical Specifications** (page 212).



The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a curb.

**Note:** Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

## Vehicle Jack

## WARNINGS



Ensure screw thread is adequately lubricated before use.



The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.



Switch the ignition off and apply park brake fully before lifting vehicle.



It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

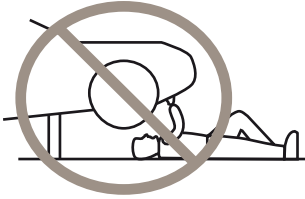


No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



**WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

# Wheels and Tires



E166722

## WARNING



**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.

**Note:** Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a vehicle jack or a wheel brace.

## Vehicles without a Temporary Mobility Kit

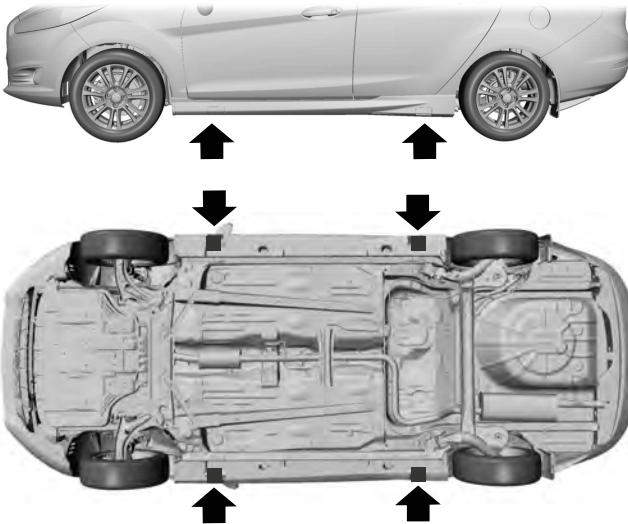
Your vehicle jack, wheel brace, screw-in towing eye and wheel trim remover are located in the spare wheel well.

## Jacking and Lifting Points

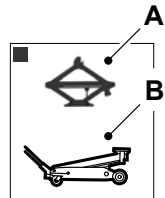
### WARNING



**WARNING:** Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.



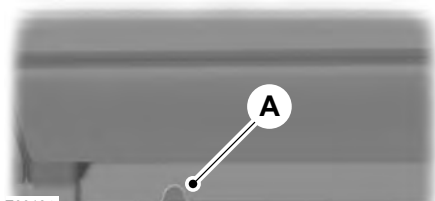
E92658





# Wheels and Tires

- A Emergency use only
- B Maintenance



E93184

Small marks on the vehicle sills **(A)** show the location of the jacking points.



E142553

Place the hexagonal end of the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool onto the vehicle jack. Turn the jack handle clockwise to raise your vehicle.



E93020

Refer to vehicle jack manufacturer's instructions.

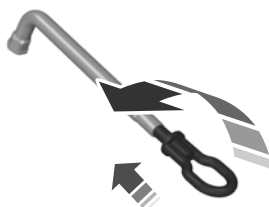
## Assembling the Wheel Brace

### Type One

#### WARNING



The screw-in towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.



E122502

# Wheels and Tires

Insert the screw-in towing eye into the wheel brace.

## Type Two



E159432

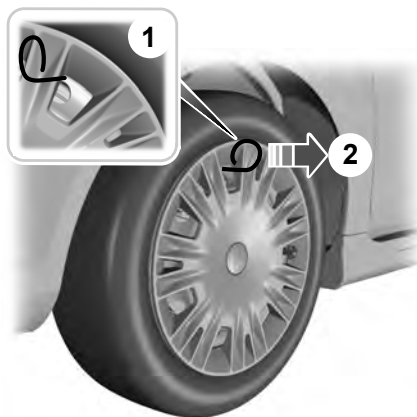
**Note:** When jacking your vehicle, you will need to rotate the wheel brace 180 degrees, pivot the wheel brace back to the original position before rotating again.

## Using the Wheel Brace as a Jack Handle

1. Attach the wheel brace to the jack horizontally.
2. Rotate the wheel brace 180 degrees.
3. Return the wheel brace to the original position and repeat as necessary.

## Removing the Wheel Trim

### Type One



E122314

1. Insert the wheel trim remover.
2. Remove the wheel trim.

**Note:** Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.

### Type Two

Insert the flat end of the wheel brace between the rim and the trim and carefully remove the trim.

## Removing a Road Wheel

### WARNINGS




Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.





Make sure that the wheels are pointing straight ahead.


# Wheels and Tires

## WARNINGS

 If your vehicle has a manual transmission, move the selector lever to first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, move the selector lever to park (P).

 Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.

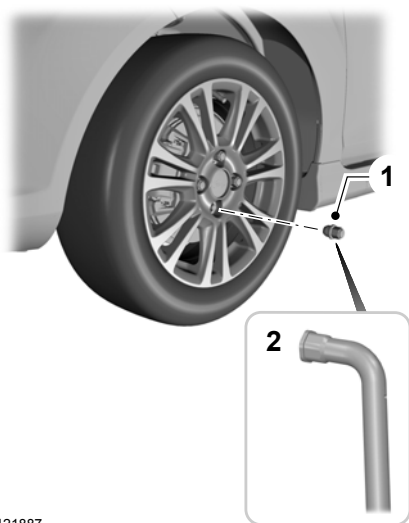
 Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

 Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

**Note:** The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.

1. Install the locking lug nut key.





E121887

2. Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.
3. Slacken the lug nuts.
4. Jack up your vehicle until the tyre is clear of the ground.
5. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.

## Installing a Road Wheel

### WARNINGS

 Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Please contact an authorized dealer for more details regarding compatibility.

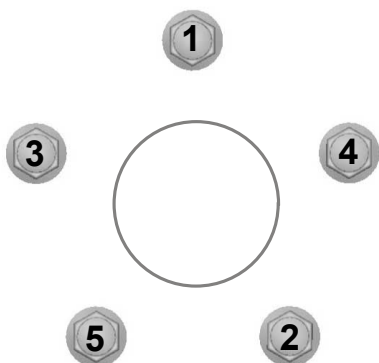
 Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

**Note:** The lug nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).

**Note:** Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.

# Wheels and Tires



E154985

4. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 212).
7. Install the wheel trim using the ball of your hand.

## WARNING



Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

## Stowing the Flat Tyre

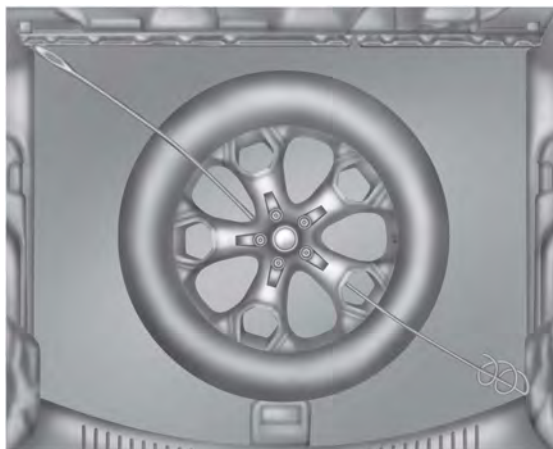
1. Unblock the wheels.
2. Place the flat tyre on the luggage compartment floor.



E142906

3. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the other end through the loop.

## Wheels and Tires



E142985

4. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
5. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the luggage compartment. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull it tight.

1

2

3



E143746

6. Secure by tying two half hitch knots.

# Wheels and Tires

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Lug Nut Torque

Wheel type	lb-ft (Nm)
All	100 (135)

### Tire Pressures (Cold Tires)

#### Up to 50 mph (80 km/h)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar	bar	bar	bar
Temporary spare wheel when it differs from the other fitted wheels	155/70 R17	4.2 bar	4.2 bar	4.2 bar	4.2 bar

#### Up to 68 mph (110 km/h)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar	bar	bar	bar
All engines	235/55 R17 *	2.4 bar	2.4 bar	2.4 bar	2.8 bar
All engines	235/50 R18	2.3 bar	2.3 bar	2.4 bar	2.8 bar
All engines	235/45 R19	2.3 bar	2.3 bar	2.4 bar	2.8 bar

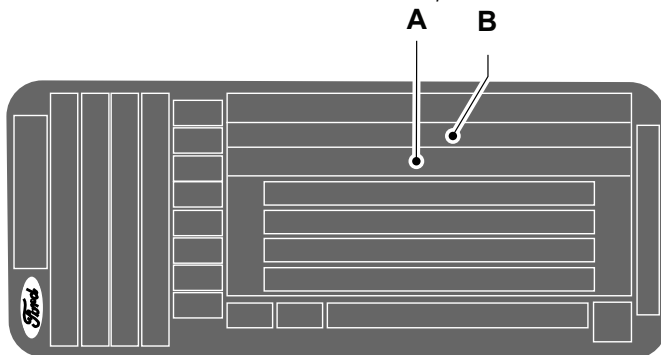
\*Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

**Note:** Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

**Note:** The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.



E219554

- A Vehicle identification number
- B Vehicle Built Date

Your vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate, located at the bottom of the lock side of the right-hand door aperture.

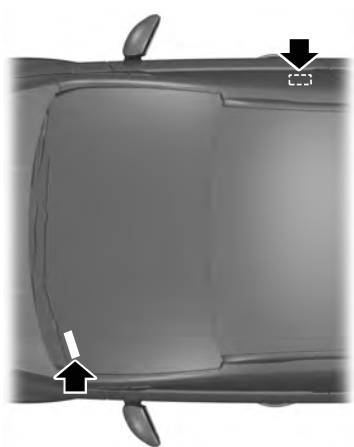
## Built Date

**Built Date** means the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



# Audio System

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

### CD and CD Player Information

**Note:** *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

**Note:** *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

### MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

# Audio System

---

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

## AUDIUNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD

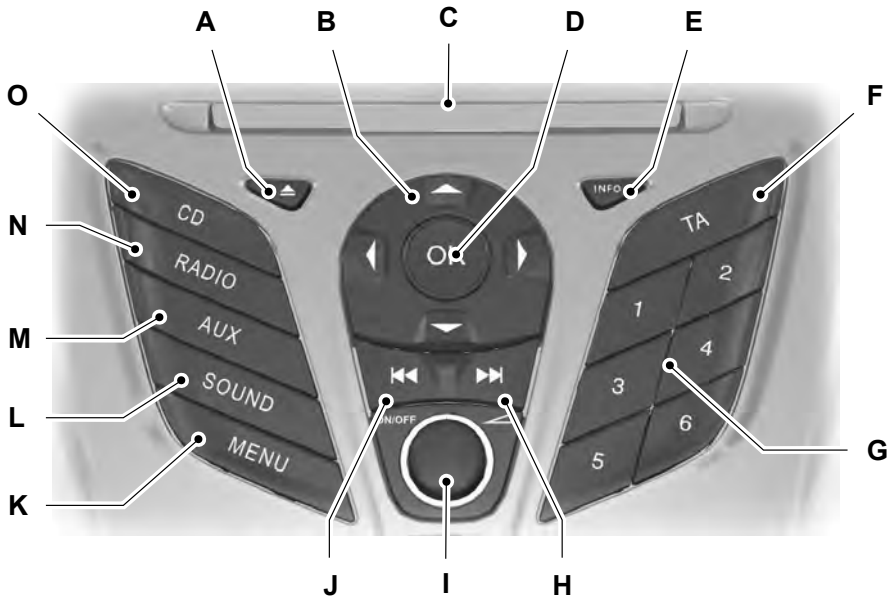
### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

# Audio System



E130324

- A **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- C **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.
- D **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- E **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.
- F **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.
- G **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns.
- H **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.
- I **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.
- J **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.

# Audio System

---

- K **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- L **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade.
- M **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- N **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- O **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

## Sound Button

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the **SOUND** button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

## Waveband Button

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press **OK**.

## Station Tuning Control

### Seek Tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

## Manual Tuning

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **RADIO** mode and then **MANUAL TUNE**.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
4. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

## Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **RADIO** mode and then **SCAN**.
3. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
4. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

## Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.

# Audio System

- Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** *When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

## Autostore Control

**Note:** *This will store up to a maximum of the six strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.*

- Press and hold the **RADIO** button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

## Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

### Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, **TP** will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and **Traffic announcement** will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** *If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcement will be heard.*

**Note:** *When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

## Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

## Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** during the announcement.

**Note:** *If you press TA or TRAFFIC at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*

## Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

# Audio System

1. Press the **MENU** button and select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
2. Select **AVC LEVEL** or **ADAPTIVE VOL**.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## News Broadcasts

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **NEWS** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, **AF** will be shown in the display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **ALTERNAT FREQ** or **ALTERNATIVE FREQ** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

# Audio System

---

2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **RDS REGIONAL** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## **AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCAST (DAB) RADIO/SYNC**

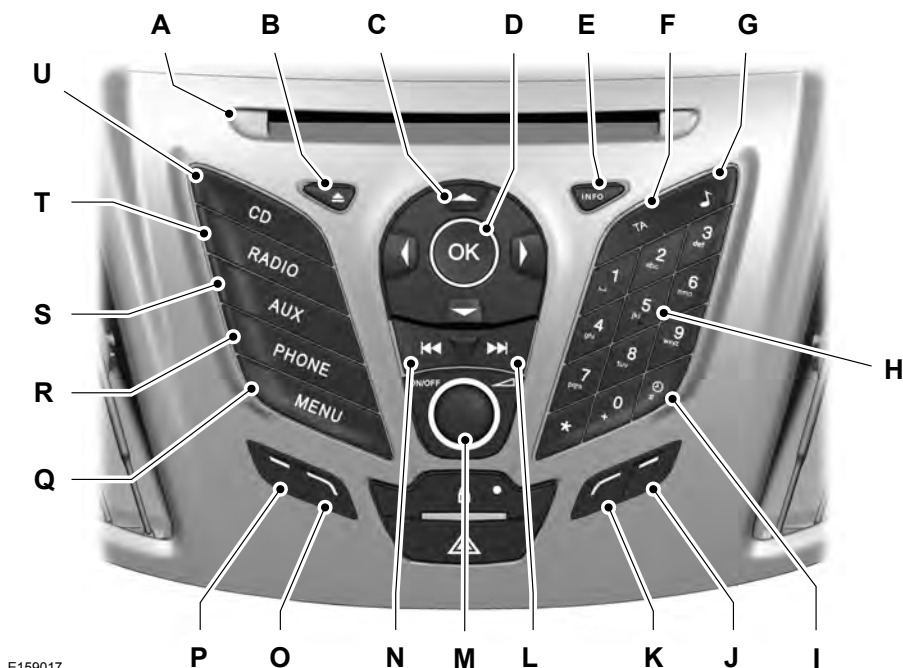
### **WARNING**



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

## Audio System



E159017

- A CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.
- B Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.
- C Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- D OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- E INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.
- F TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.
- G SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade.
- H Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns.
- I Clock:** Press the button to select clock setup.



# Audio System

---

- J **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- K **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- L **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.
- M **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.
- N **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.
- O **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- P **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- Q **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- R **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing **PHONE** then **MENU**.
- S **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- T **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- U **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

## Sound Button

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the sound button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

## Waveband Button

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press **OK**.

# Audio System

## Station Tuning Control

### Seek Tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

### Manual Tuning

1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

### Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

1. Press function button 3.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press function button 3 again or **OK** to continue listening to a station.

### Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.

### Autostore Control

**Note:** This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband, and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

- Press and hold the **RADIO** button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

### Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

### Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, **TP** will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and **Traffic announcement** will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

# Audio System

---

**Note:** If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcement will be heard.

**Note:** When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.

## Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

## Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** during the announcement.

**Note:** If you press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** at any other time it will switch all announcements off.

## Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the **MENU** button and select **AUDIO** or **Audio settings**.
2. Select **Adaptive vol**.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## News Broadcasts

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **Audio settings**.
3. Scroll to **News** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, however, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

# Audio System

---

When selected, AF will be shown in the display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **Audio settings**.
3. Scroll to **Alternat. frequency** or **ALTERNATIVE FREQ.** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

**Regional mode on:** This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

**Regional mode off:** This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **Audio settings**.
3. Scroll to **RDS regional** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCAST (DAB) RADIO/NAVIGATION SYSTEM/SYNC

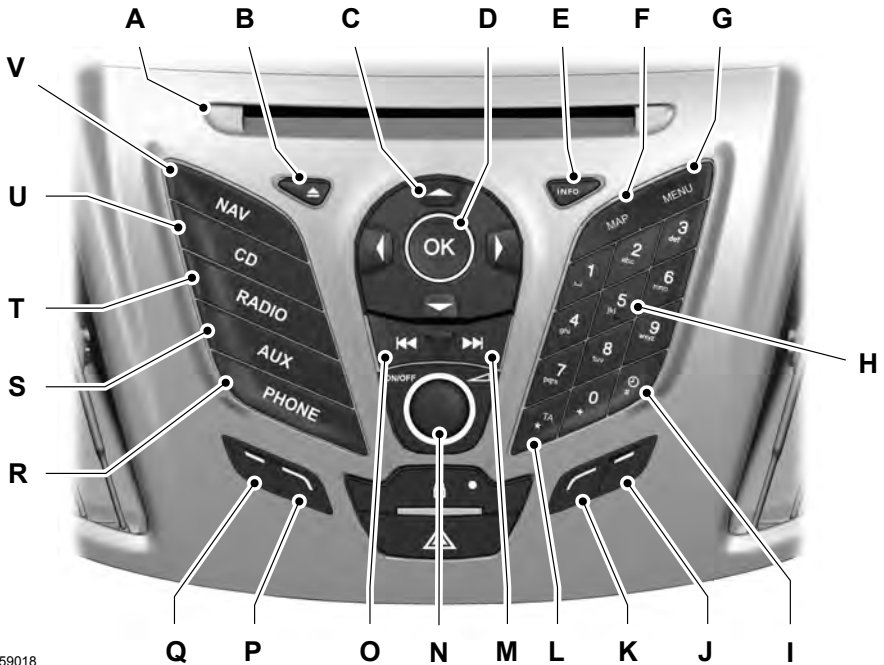
### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

# Audio System



E159018

- A **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.
- B **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.
- C **Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- D **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- E **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.
- F **MAP:** Press the button to access map features.
- G **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- H **Numeric keypad** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns.
- I **Clock:** Press the button to select clock setup.
- J **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

# Audio System

---

- K **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- L **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.
- M **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD when in CD mode. In phone mode, use the button to end a phone call. An incoming call can be rejected.
- N **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.
- O **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD, When in CD mode. In phone mode use the button to begin a phone call. An incoming phone call can be accepted.
- P **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- Q **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- R **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing **PHONE** then **MENU**.
- S **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- T **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- U **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- V **NAV:** Press the button to access the navigation system.

## Sound Button

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the sound button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

## Waveband Button

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press **OK**.

# Audio System

---

## Station Tuning Control

### DAB Service Linking

**Note:** This feature does not automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** Service linking allows cross-referencing to other corresponding frequencies of the same station, for example FM and other DAB ensembles.

**Note:** The system will automatically change to another corresponding station if the current one becomes unavailable, for example when leaving the coverage area.

Switching DAB service linking on and off. See **General Information** (page 215).

### Seek Tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

### Manual Tuning

1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

### Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

1. Press function button 3.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press function button 3 again or **OK** to continue listening to a station.

## Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.

## Autostore Control

**Note:** This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband, and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

**Note:** You must select either **FM AST** or **AM AST** to use this function.

- Press and hold the **RADIO** button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

## Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

# Audio System

---

## Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, **TP** will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and Traffic announcement will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** *If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcement will be heard.*

**Note:** *When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

## Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

## Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** during the announcement.

**Note:** *If you press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*

## Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the **MENU** button and select **AUDIO**.
2. Select **Adaptive vol.**
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Digital Signal Processing

### Digital Signal Processing Occupancy

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in your vehicle to each seat. You must select the correct sitting position for the audio to be correctly set.

### Digital Signal Processing Equalizer

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

### Changing the Digital Signal Processing Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **Audio settings**.



# Audio System

3. Scroll to the required digital signal processing function.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
5. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
6. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## News Broadcasts

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **Audio settings**.
3. Scroll to **News** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, however, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, AF will be shown in the display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **Audio settings**.
3. Scroll to **Alternat. frequency** or **ALTERNATIVE FREQ.** and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode on: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode off: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause 'random' alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

# Audio System

---

2. Select **AUDIO** or **Audio settings**.
3. Scroll to **RDS regional** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

**Note:** An integrated multi function display is situated above the unit. This shows important information regarding control of your system. Additionally, there are various icons placed around the display screen which light up when a function is active (for example CD, Radio or Aux.)

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCAST (DAB) RADIO/SYNC/SONY AM/FM/CD

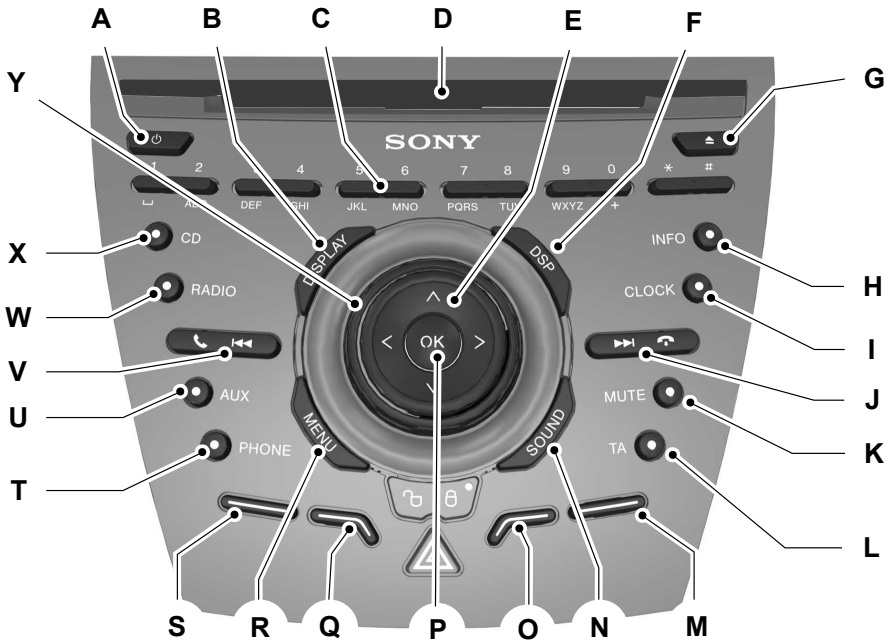
### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

# Audio System



E129074

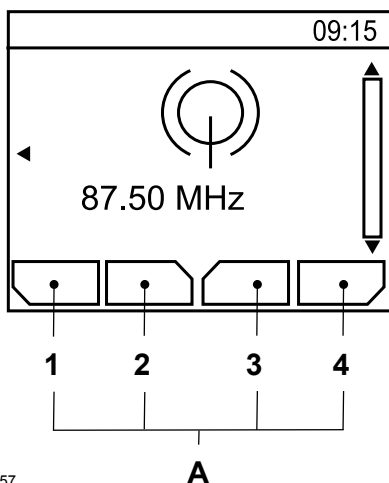
- A **On, Off:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off.
- B **DISPLAY:** Press the button to turn on the display into idle mode.
- C **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. In CD mode, press a number to select a track. In phone mode, use the buttons to dial a phone number.
- D **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.
- E **Cursor arrows:** Press the button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- F **Digital signal processing:** Press the button to access the digital signal processing functions.
- G **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.
- H **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.
- I **CLOCK:** Press the button to access the clock functions.

# Audio System

---

- J **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD when in CD mode. In phone mode, use the button to end a phone call. An incoming call can be rejected.
- K **MUTE:** Press the button to turn the sound off, press again to turn the sound on.
- L **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.
- M **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- N **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade.
- O **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- P **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- Q **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- R **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- S **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- T **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing **PHONE** then **MENU**. See separate manual.
- U **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- V **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD, When in CD mode. In phone mode use the button to begin a phone call. An incoming phone call can be accepted.
- W **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- X **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- Y **Volume:** Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

# Audio System



E104157

- A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. The description for the current function displays in the screen.

## Sound Button

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the **SOUND** button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

## Waveband Button

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press **OK**.

## Station Tuning Control

### DAB Service Linking

**Note:** The system does not automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** Service linking allows cross-referencing to other corresponding frequencies of the same station, for example FM and other DAB ensembles.

**Note:** The system will automatically change to another corresponding station if the current one becomes unavailable, for example when leaving the coverage area.

Switching DAB service linking on and off. See (page 66).

## Seek Tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

## Manual Tuning

1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

## Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

# Audio System

1. Press function button 3.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press function button 3 again or **OK** to continue listening to a station.

## Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** *When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

## Autostore Control

**Note:** *This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband, and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.*

**Note:** *You must select either **FM AST** or **AM AST** to use this function.*

- Press and hold the **RADIO** button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

## Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

### Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, **TP** will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and Traffic announcement will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** *If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcement will be heard.*

**Note:** *When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

## Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

# Audio System

## Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** during the announcement.

**Note:** If you press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** at any other time it will switch all announcements off.

## Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Select **AVC LEVEL** or **ADAPTIVE VOL**.
4. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
5. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
6. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Digital Signal Processing

### Digital Signal Processing Occupancy

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in your vehicle to each seat. You must select the correct sitting position for the audio to be correctly set.

### Digital Signal Processing Equalizer

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

### Changing the Digital Signal Processing Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to the required digital signal processing function.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
6. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
7. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## News Broadcasts

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **NEWS** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, however, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

# Audio System

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, AF will be shown in the display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **ALTERNAT FREQ.** or **ALTERNATIVE FREQ.** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause 'random' alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **RDS REGIONAL** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCAST (DAB) RADIO/NAVIGATION SYSTEM/SYNC/SONY AM/FM/CD

### WARNING

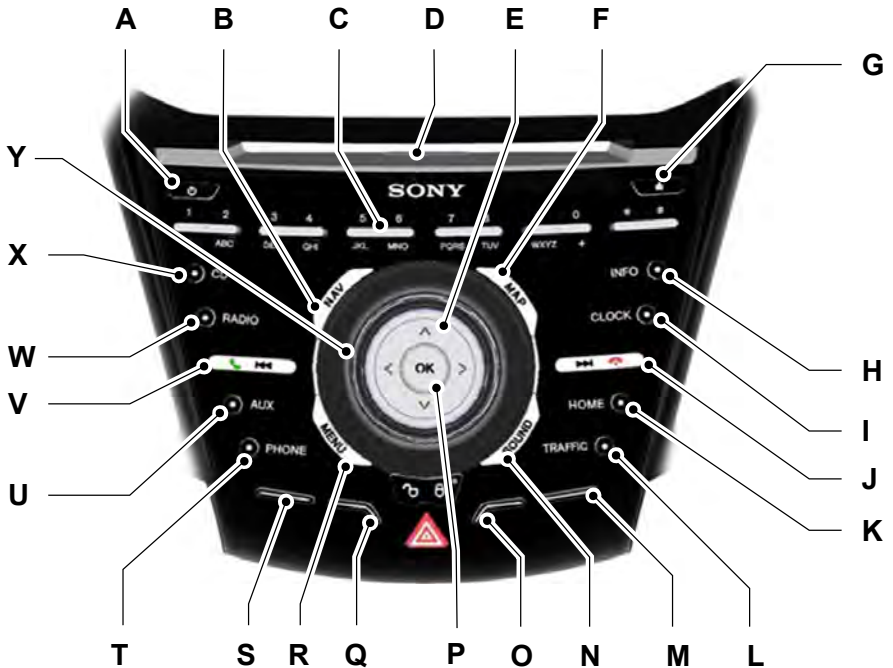


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** *An integrated multi function display is situated above the unit. This shows important information regarding control of your system. Additionally, there are various icons placed around the display screen which light up when a function is active (for example CD, Radio or Aux.)*



# Audio System



E156660

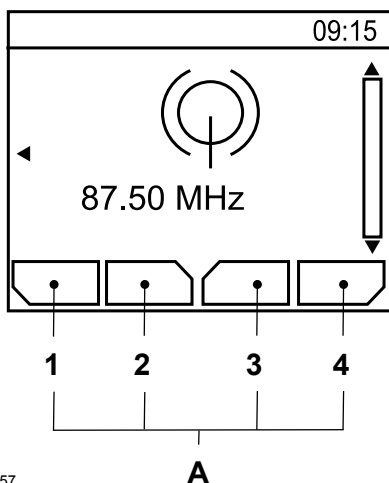
- A On, Off:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off.
- B NAV:** Press the button to access the navigation system.
- C Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. In CD mode, press a number to select a track. In phone mode, use the buttons to dial a phone number.
- D CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.
- E Cursor arrows:** Press the button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- F MAP:** Press the button to access map features.
- G Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.
- H INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB, iPod and Navigation information. If Navigation has been selected, pressing this button will show details of your current location or journey.

# Audio System

---

- I **CLOCK:** Press the button to access the clock functions.
- J **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD when in CD mode. In phone mode, use the button to end a phone call. An incoming call can be rejected.
- K **HOME:** Press the button to access the address menu, to start navigating to your home address or to change your home address.
- L **TRAFFIC:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancel an active announcement. If Navigation has been selected, pressing this button takes you to the traffic menu.
- M **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- N **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade.
- O **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- P **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- Q **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- R **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- S **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- T **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing **PHONE** then **MENU**. See separate manual.
- U **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- V **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD, when in CD mode. In phone mode use the button to begin a phone call. An incoming phone call can be accepted.
- W **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- X **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
- Y **Volume:** Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

# Audio System



E104157

- A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. The description for the current function displays in the screen.

## Sound Button

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the **SOUND** button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

## Waveband Button

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press **OK**.

## Station Tuning Control

### DAB Service Linking

**Note:** The system does not automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** Service linking allows cross-referencing to other corresponding frequencies of the same station, for example FM and other DAB ensembles.

**Note:** The system will automatically change to another corresponding station if the current one becomes unavailable, for example when leaving the coverage area.

Switching DAB service linking on and off. See (page 66).

## Seek Tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

## Manual Tuning

1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

## Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

# Audio System

---

1. Press function button 3.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press function button 3 again or **OK** to continue listening to a station.

## Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** *When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

## Autostore Control

**Note:** *This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband, and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.*

**Note:** *You must select either **FM AST** or **AM AST** to use this function.*

- Press and hold the **RADIO** button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

## Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

### Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, **TP** will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and Traffic announcement will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** *If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcement will be heard.*

**Note:** *When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

## Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

# Audio System

---

## Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** during the announcement.

**Note:** If you press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** at any other time it will switch all announcements off.

## Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Select **AVC LEVEL** or **ADAPTIVE VOL**.
4. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
5. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
6. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Digital Signal Processing

### Digital Signal Processing Occupancy

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in your vehicle to each seat. You must select the correct sitting position for the audio to be correctly set.

### Digital Signal Processing Equalizer

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

### Changing the Digital Signal Processing Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to the required digital signal processing function.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
6. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
7. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## News Broadcasts

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **NEWS** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, however, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

# Audio System

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, **AF** will be shown in the display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **ALTERNAT FREQ.** or **ALTERNATIVE FREQ.** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **RDS REGIONAL** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## DIGITAL RADIO

### General Information

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

**Note:** Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

The following formats are supported:

- DAB.
- DAB+.
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

### Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

**Note:** When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.

### Selecting Radio Band

DAB1 and DAB2 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB1** or **DAB2**.

# Audio System

**Note:** When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning will skip to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio will briefly mute.

## Radio Station Tuning Controls

### Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

### Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press function button 1.
2. Press the left or right arrow buttons to change ensembles. Press the up or down arrow buttons to navigate to your required radio station.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

**Note:** The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.

### Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

1. Press function button 2.
2. Press the tune buttons. Press and hold to move through the waveband quickly.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

**Note:** Seek tuning is also possible within this screen.

## Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 10 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. When the system stores the station, a message appears. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

**Note:** Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system mutes when this happens. This may result in unexpected changes to radio station presets.

## Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select a radio station and press function button 3.

**Note:** Extra information may not always be available.

## Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display. See (page 66).

**Note:** If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.

**Note:** The system displays the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.

**Note:** The sound quality changes when your system switches from DAB to the corresponding FM station.

## AUDIO INPUT JACK

### WARNINGS



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe

# Audio System

## WARNINGS

operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



Do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player when your vehicle is moving.



Do not place your portable music player on the instrument panel. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the audio input jack.
3. Switch the radio on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch your portable music player on and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press **AUX** or **MEDIA** until **LINE** or **LINE IN** appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.



E149149

The audio input jack allows you to connect and play music from a portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones.

Your audio extension cable must have male 1/8th-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at each end.

1. Switch off the radio and portable music player. Apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (**P**) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission. Switch the ignition off.

## USB PORT (If Equipped)



E142604

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See your SYNC information.



# Audio System

---

## AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING

Audio unit display	Rectification
Please check CD	General error message for CD fault conditions, for example cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Make sure the disc is loaded correctly. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If error persists contact an authorized dealer.
CD drive malfunction	General error message for CD fault conditions. For example a mechanism fault.
CD drive high temp.	Ambient temperature too hot – unit will not work until it has cooled down.

# Navigation

Press the relevant button on the unit bezel to access the system functions. This will take you into the selected mode.

For instructions on how to operate the audio unit and the available navigation features, see the relevant audio unit procedure. See **Audio System** (page 215).

## Loading Map Data

### WARNINGS



The indicated maximum speed may not be applicable to your vehicle. It is always your responsibility to control your vehicle, supervise any system and obey the correct speed limit. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.



The front glass on the liquid crystal display may break if hit with a hard object. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with the skin, wash immediately with soap and water.

**Note:** Do not switch the ignition on or attempt to start the engine while the software is updating.

**Note:** Do not clean the unit with solvents or aerosol cleaning agents. Use only a damp cloth.

**Note:** The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, see an authorized dealer.

**Note:** The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to remove the card without first pushing it in. This could cause damage.



E129900

1. Load the navigation SD card into the slot.
2. Press the **NAV** button. The road safety warning confirms the map data import was successful.
3. The system is now ready to use.

For map updates and system upgrades, see an authorized dealer.

**Note:** You can only use Ford licensed data.

## Road Safety

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

# Navigation

**Note:** You are ultimately responsible for the safe operation of your vehicle and must evaluate whether it is safe to follow route suggestions. Navigation features are provided only as an aid. Driving decisions based on observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations must be observed. Do not follow route suggestions if they would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate due to errors, changes in roads, traffic or driving conditions.

## Safety Information

If detailed viewing of route instructions is necessary, pull off the road when it is safe to do so and park your vehicle.

## Setting a Route

**Note:** After the first entry, the country selected will remain the default option until you manually change it.

Press the **NAV** button and select:

Message	Action
Destination input	Starting at the top, select the country followed by either the postcode or city and street name, together with the house number or intersection. Use the arrow buttons to enter the destination details.
Start guidance	Select this after entering sufficient information.

The route is calculated and the screen returns to the main navigation screen. If prompted, select the type of route you require first. Follow the screen and voice prompts to reach your destination.

**Note:** If required you can select different character screens by using the up and down arrow buttons.

**Note:** If you only need to navigate to a city center, just enter the city name and start guidance.

**Note:** If you only need to navigate to a district, within a city for example, just enter the district name and start guidance.

## Menu Structure

You can access the menu using the information and entertainment display control. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

For a description on some menu items refer to the relevant table.

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

Message	
Route	Active guidance
	Route sections list
	Block next section

# Navigation

Message		
	Unblock route sections	
Destination input	Country	
	City/postcode	
	Street	
	District	
	Start guidance	
Traffic	TA	
	TMC for route	
	All TMC	
	Block next section	
	Route sections list	
Home address	Unblock route sections	
Last destinations		
Favourites	Favourites (A-Z)	
Points of interest	POIs nearby	
	Near destination	
	Along motorway	
	POIs near address	
	Search by name	
Tour planning	New tour	
	Stored tours	
Store position		
Route options	Route:	Eco
		Fast
		Short

# Navigation

Message		
		Always ask
	Driver:	Leisurely
		Normal
		Fast
	Eco settings	Trailer:
		Roof box
	Dynamic	
	Motorway	
	Tunnel	
	Ferry/motorail	
	Toll	
	Seasonal roads	
	Toll sticker	
Special functions	GPS info	
	System info	
	Enter position	
	Demo mode	

## Route Options

Press the **NAV** button and scroll to route options. You can then set your route options for any of the following.

Message		Description and Action
Route:	Always ask	Select to make sure that you are always given the choice of route option for your journey.
Eco		Uses the most fuel efficient route. Your driving style will influence this.
Fast		Uses the fastest route possible.

# Navigation

Message		Description and Action
Short		Uses the shortest distance possible.
Driver:	Leisurely	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a leisurely drive to the destination.
	Normal	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a normal drive to the destination.
	Fast	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a fast drive to the destination.
Eco settings	Trailer:	Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to whether or not you are towing a trailer and if so the size of trailer being towed.
	Roof box	Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to the use of a roof box.
	Dynamic	When switched on, and if the unit is receiving a valid traffic message channel signal, the route will be automatically updated to take into account real time traffic incidents or congestion. This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.
	Motorway	When switched off the system will avoid freeways on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Tunnel	When switched off the system will avoid tunnels on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Ferry/motorail	When switched off the system will avoid ferry crossings and car train facilities on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

# Navigation

Message		Description and Action
	Toll	When switched off the system will avoid toll roads on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Seasonal roads	When switched off the system will avoid seasonal roads (for example, mountain passes) on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Toll sticker	When switched off the system will avoid toll routes and automatically update your route distance and timings.

## Information

Press the information button to view details of your current location or journey. During active route guidance pressing this button will repeat the last navigation instruction.

## Setting Your Navigation Preferences

Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

**Press the NAV button and choose any of the following options.**

Message	Description and Action
Destination input	Enter your destination details (for example enter city names, enter street names or pick a place from a map).
Traffic	Choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route (for example, block sections on route).
Home address	See the location on the map currently stored as the home position. Only one entry can be saved as the home address.
Last destinations	Access a history of previous destinations entered in the system. Select the required repeat destination from the list.
Favourites	See a list of your saved favorites.
Points of interest	Search for and select points of interest nearby, on your route or at your destination. You can search by name or by category.
Tour planning	Set up and store a new tour by entering a number of different destinations and select the order in which you wish to visit them. You can also modify an existing tour or recall a previous tour. The system will automatically calculate and display your chosen journey.

# Navigation

Message	Description and Action
Store position	Store and name your current position. This will automatically save in your favorites.
Route options	Set your route options from the available list.
Special functions	Select GPS and system information or a demonstration of the system functionality. Select a demonstration mode where the system will simulate a journey whilst the vehicle is stationary. You can manually select a vehicle start position.

**Press the MENU button, select the navigation option and choose any of the following options.**

Message	Description and Action
Route options	Set your route options.
Map display	Customize the map display for your journey (for example arrows on map, arrival times and map content).
Assistance options	Customize display information for your journey (for example signs, lanes and speed limits). Turn the hazard warning feature on or off.
Personal data	Delete personal data (for example your home address).
Reset all settings	Reset the navigation settings.

## Storing Your Home Address

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select the home address option.
3. Enter the required details using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the confirm function button.

**Note:** Your last destination will automatically display if you go to change your home address.

## Adding a Favorite

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Scroll to the destination input option.

3. Enter the required details using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the store function button.

**Note:** If you select store position, this will also save the destination in your favorites.

## Selecting a Favorite

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select the favorites option.
3. Scroll to the required destination using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the **OK** button to start navigation.



# Navigation

## Adjusting the Navigation Voice Level

You can adjust the voice prompt level during an active voice prompt by using the volume control.

**Note:** During active route guidance pressing the information button will repeat the last navigation instruction.

## Nav Audio Mixing

This feature allows you to adjust the volume mix between the audio unit and navigation voice level.

## Tolerant Destination Input

This function will search a number of destinations with a similar spelling to what you have entered. This is helpful if you are unsure on how to spell a destination.

Message	Action
Tolerant	Press the <b>NAV</b> button and scroll to this destination input option before entering your destination details.

Then begin to input your destination. Press the **OK** button. The system will search for destinations with similar spellings. Use the arrow buttons to select a destination from the list and press the **OK** button to confirm your destination.

## Route Displays

### Map Display

Press the **MAP** button to view map mode. This view will show your current location with your vehicle in the center shown as an arrow surrounded by a circle. The arrow will face in the direction of travel.

The information on the top line gives the name of the current road, or the next road to take if a turn is approaching.

You can change the way the map is displayed by altering the zoom and orientation settings. Press function button one. The current map scale is shown on the display.

Map scale settings may be set between 0.05 miles to 500 miles or 50 meters to 500 kilometers, with an auto setting on the top. The auto setting continuously changes the map scale according to vehicle speed and the road type being driven.

You can use the arrow buttons to change the view to 2D, turn-by-turn, 3D or a clean view.

### Zoom

This feature will automatically increase the zoom on the map display at times when you are required to make a turn, or perform more complex maneuvers. Shortly after the zoom scale will return to the previous level when in auto mode.

Manual: Press function button one and adjust the setting using the left or right arrow buttons. Press **OK** to confirm your setting.

Auto: Press function button one and using the up or down arrow key select the auto option. Press **OK** to confirm your setting.

# Navigation

## Move

When you are in map mode, press function button two. You can now use the arrow buttons on the audio unit to move around the map.

Press function button two again to return to the original view.

## Navigation Display

After commencing a navigation route, the default screen is the main navigation screen.

Once an active route is underway, guidance will be given by on-screen information and voice prompts. Whichever audio source you wish to leave the unit in, basic turn by turn and distance information will remain on the screen in the form of a graphic inset. You do not need to leave the unit on the main navigation screen when you are navigating a route. Press the **MAP** button at any time to return to the main navigation screen. Slightly more detailed information on your route may be available using the main navigation screen if required.

## Hazard Spot Warning

The system supports a hazard spot warning feature which informs you with visible and audible feedback about hazardous traffic areas.

Message	Description
Assistance options	You can switch the system on and off using the information and entertainment display menu. Refer to this option in the navigation menu.

**Note:** *This feature is only available in certain countries.*

## Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase. See an authorized dealer.

## Type Approvals



SD Logo is a trademark.




The navigation software is based in part on the work of the FreeType team © 2006

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the independent JPEG Group.





# Appendices

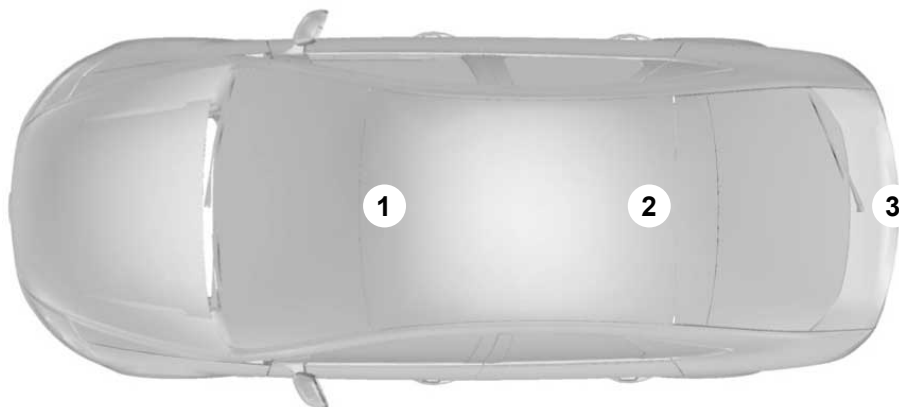
## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

### WARNINGS

 Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by an authorized dealer.

### WARNINGS

-  The radio frequency transmitter equipment (e.g. cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters etc.) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they keep to the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.
-  Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.
-  Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.
-  Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 inches (10 centimeters) from any electronic modules and airbags.



E170906

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1 – 30	50 W	3
31 – 54	50 W	1, 2
68 – 87.5	50 W	1, 2

# Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
142 – 176	50 W	1, 2
380 – 512	50 W	1, 2
806 – 940	10 W	1, 2
1200 – 1400	10 W	1, 2
1710 – 1885	10 W	1, 2
1885 – 2025	10 W	1, 2

**Note:** After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- with the ignition ON
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials,

and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

## Appendices

- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

### Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

## Appendices

---

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates,

## Appendices

---

supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

### **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

# Appendices

---

## **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

## **No Liability for Certain Damages:**

EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.



# Appendices

## Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

## End User Notice

### **Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information**

This system Ford SYNC contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

**Read and follow instructions:** Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

**Keep User's Guide in vehicle:** When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

## WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

## General Operation

**Voice Command Control:** Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

**Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

**Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

## Appendices

---

### **Use of Speech Recognition Functions:**

Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

**Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

**Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

**Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

**Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

**Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

**Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

### **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the Telenav Software. Your use of the Telenav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the Telenav Software.

These terms and conditions represent the agreement ("Agreement") between you and Telenav, Inc. ("Telenav") with respect to the Telenav Software (including upgrades, modifications, or additions thereto) (collectively "Telenav Software"). All references herein to "you" and "your" means you, your employees, agents, and contractors, and any other entity on whose behalf you accept these terms and conditions, all of whom shall also be bound by this Agreement. Additionally, all of your account information, as well as other payment and personal information provided by you to Telenav (directly or through the use of the Telenav Software, is subject to Telenav's privacy policy located at <http://www.telenav.com>.

# Appendices

---

Telenav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

## **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the Telenav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the Telenav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the Telenav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the Telenav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the Telenav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the Telenav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold Telenav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the Telenav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## **2. Account Information**

You agree: (a) when registering the Telenav Software, to provide Telenav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform Telenav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## **3. Software License**

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, Telenav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the Telenav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the Telenav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the Telenav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### **3.1 License Limitations**

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the Telenav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the Telenav Software without the prior express written consent of Telenav; (c) remove from the Telenav Software, or alter, any of Telenav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Telenav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software; or (e) use the Telenav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property

## Appendices

---

or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the Telenav Software without advanced written permission of Telenav.

### 4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will Telenav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the Telenav Software. Telenav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the Telenav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the Telenav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the Telenav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the Telenav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM

COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

### 5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENNAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENNAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENNAV AND OF ALL OF TELENNAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE. SOME

# Appendices

---

STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the Telenav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both Telenav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the Telenav Software agreeing to be bound by

the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to Telenav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the Telenav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Telenav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between Telenav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, Telenav retains all right, title and interest in and to the Telenav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and Telenav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

### **8.3**

By using the Telenav Software, you consent to receive from Telenav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the Telenav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. Telenav may provide such

# Appendices

---

Notices by posting them on Telenav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the Telenav Software.

## 8.4

Telenav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

## 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including," and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation."

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this

Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

### 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

### TERMS AND CONDITIONS

# Appendices

---

## 9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 20xx. All rights reserved.

### ***Permitted Use.***

You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### ***Restrictions.***

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any

positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

### ***Warning.***

The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

### ***No Warranty.***

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

### ***Disclaimer of Warranty:***

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

# Appendices

---

## ***Disclaimer of Liability:***

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

## ***Export Control.***

You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent

that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

## ***Entire Agreement.***

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## ***Governing Law.***

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

## ***Government End Users.***

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:



# Appendices

## NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425  
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois  
60606

This Data is a commercial item as  
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to  
these End-User Terms under which this  
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

### I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

# Appendices

---

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

# Appendices

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice:  
"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

## III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
-----------	--------

Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
---------	--

Guade- loupe, French Guiana and Marti- nique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"
--	---

## IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
---------	--------

Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.
--------	--

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

# Appendices

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

# Appendices

Austria "© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"

Croatia  
Cyprus,  
Estonia,  
Latvia,  
Lithuania,  
Moldova,  
Poland,  
Slovenia  
and/or  
Ukraine

"© EuroGeographics"

France "source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"

Germany "Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"

Great Britain "Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"

Greece "Copyright Geomatics Ltd."

Hungary "Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."

Italy "La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."

Norway "Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"

Portugal "Source: IgeoE – Portugal"

Spain "Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"

Sweden "Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."

Switzerland "Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

## VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited ([www.pasma.com.au](http://www.pasma.com.au)).

# Appendices

---

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelmatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

## VII. China Territory

### *Personal Use Only*

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### *Restrictions*

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b)

with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### *Limited Warranty*

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

### *rigCustomer Remedies*

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

# Appendices

---

## **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

# Appendices

---

## Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.



## Appendices

---

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

### **Vehicle with SYNC only United States and Mexico**

FCC ID: KMHSG1G1

IC: 1422A-SG1G1

#### **Mexico**

Model: KMHSG1P1

NOM-121-SCT1-2009

The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### **Vehicle with SYNC with Touchscreen/My Touch**

FCC ID: KMHSYNGG2

IC: 1422A-SYNGG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### **WARNING**



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

# Appendices

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intellematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult [www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/](http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/).

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at [www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/](http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/).

### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intellematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

## 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

## 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

## 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intellematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the **"Suppliers"**)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intellematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intellematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or

# Appendices

---

Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

### WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

---



# Index

## 4

4WD	
See: Four-Wheel Drive.....	127

## A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	85
About This Manual.....	5
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	132
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	132
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	7
ACC	
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	145
Active City Stop.....	158
Principle of Operation.....	158
Switching the System Off and On.....	159
Active Park Assist.....	138
Using the System.....	139
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	39
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	85
Air Vents.....	85
Center.....	85
Center Console.....	86
Side.....	86
Alarm	
See: Anti-Theft Alarm.....	38
Ambient Lighting.....	52
Anti-Theft Alarm.....	38
Arming the Alarm.....	38
Disarming the Alarm.....	38
Appendices.....	257
At a Glance.....	9
Front Exterior Overview.....	9
Instrument Panel Overview.....	11
Rear Exterior Overview.....	13
Vehicle Interior Overview.....	10

Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	64
Automatic Transmission Warning Chime.....	65
Door Ajar.....	64
Engine On Warning Chime.....	64
Headlamps On Warning Chime.....	64
Headlight Exit Delay.....	64
Keyless Warning Alert .....	64
Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....	64
Seatbelt Minder.....	64
Audio Control.....	39
Type 1.....	40
Type 2.....	40
Audio Input Jack.....	245
Audio System.....	215
General Information.....	215
Audio Troubleshooting.....	247
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD.....	216
Alternative Frequencies.....	220
Automatic Volume Control.....	219
Autostore Control.....	219
News Broadcasts.....	220
Regional Mode.....	220
Sound Button.....	218
Station Preset Buttons.....	218
Station Tuning Control.....	218
Traffic Information Control.....	219
Waveband Button.....	218
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio/Navigation System/SYNC/Sony AM/FM/CD.....	238
Alternative Frequencies.....	243
Automatic Volume Control.....	243
Autostore Control.....	242
Digital Signal Processing.....	243
News Broadcasts.....	243
Regional Mode.....	244
Sound Button.....	241
Station Preset Buttons.....	242
Station Tuning Control.....	241
Traffic Information Control.....	242
Waveband Button.....	241

# Index

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio/Navigation System/SYNC.....	226
Alternative Frequencies.....	231
Automatic Volume Control.....	230
Autostore Control.....	229
Digital Signal Processing.....	230
News Broadcasts.....	231
Regional Mode.....	231
Sound Button.....	228
Station Preset Buttons.....	229
Station Tuning Control.....	229
Traffic Information Control.....	229
Waveband Button.....	228
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio/SYNC/Sony AM/FM/CD.....	232
Alternative Frequencies.....	237
Automatic Volume Control.....	237
Autostore Control.....	236
Digital Signal Processing.....	237
News Broadcasts.....	237
Regional Mode.....	238
Sound Button.....	235
Station Preset Buttons.....	236
Station Tuning Control.....	235
Traffic Information Control.....	236
Waveband Button.....	235
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio/SYNC.....	221
Alternative Frequencies.....	225
Automatic Volume Control.....	225
Autostore Control.....	224
News Broadcasts.....	225
Regional Mode.....	226
Sound Button.....	223
Station Preset Buttons.....	224
Station Tuning Control.....	224
Traffic Information Control.....	224
Waveband Button.....	223
Autolamps.....	46
Automatic Climate Control.....	88
Mono Mode.....	89
Switching Mono Mode Back On.....	89
Switching Mono Mode Off.....	89
Temperature Control.....	89
Automatic High Beam Control.....	47
Manually Overriding the System.....	48
Setting the System Sensitivity.....	48
Switching the System On.....	47
Automatic Transmission.....	122
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning.....	125
Emergency Park Position Release Lever.....	124
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow.....	125
Selector Lever Positions.....	122
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission.....	123
Auto-Start-Stop.....	114
To Re-Start the Engine.....	114
To Stop the Engine.....	114
Using Auto-Start-Stop.....	114
Autowipers.....	42
Auxiliary Heater.....	93
Fuel Operated Heater.....	96
Fuel Operated Parking Heater.....	93
Auxiliary Power Points.....	105
12 Volt DC Power Point.....	105
AC Power Point.....	105
Location.....	105
<b>B</b>	
Battery	
See: Changing the 12V Battery.....	192
Blind Spot Information System.....	155
Blind Spot Information System.....	155
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	185
Brake Fluid Check.....	192
Brakes.....	132
General Information.....	132
Breaking-In.....	169
Brakes and Clutch.....	169
Engine.....	169
Tires.....	169
Bulb Specification Chart.....	200
<b>C</b>	
Capacities and Specifications.....	213

# Index

Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	202
Catalytic Converter.....	119
Driving with a Catalytic Converter.....	119
Changing a Bulb.....	194
Approach Lamp.....	197
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp.....	199
Headlamp.....	194
Interior lamp.....	199
License Plate Lamp.....	199
Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell Lamp and Liftgate Lamp.....	200
Reading lamps.....	199
Rear Lamps.....	197
Side Repeater.....	196
Changing a Fuse.....	184
Changing a Road Wheel.....	205
Assembling the Wheel Brace.....	207
Installing a Road Wheel.....	209
Jacking and Lifting Points.....	206
Locking Lug Nuts.....	205
Removing a Road Wheel.....	208
Removing the Wheel Trim.....	208
Stowing the Flat Tyre.....	210
Vehicle Jack.....	205
Vehicles with a Spare Wheel.....	205
Changing the 12V Battery.....	192
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	193
Checking Seatbelt Fit.....	19
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	192
Child Restraint Anchorage	
Locations.....	17
Upper (top tether) anchorages.....	17
Child Restraint and Seatbelt	
Maintenance.....	23
Child Restraints.....	15
Child Safety.....	15
Child Safety Locks.....	19
Manual Child Safety Locks.....	19
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	203
Cleaning the Exterior.....	202
Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts.....	202
Cleaning the Chrome Trim.....	202
Cleaning the Headlamps.....	202
Underbody.....	202
Using a Car Wash.....	202
Cleaning the Interior.....	202
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens.....	203
Rear Windows.....	203
Seatbelts.....	202
Climate Control.....	85
Principle of Operation.....	85
Clock.....	72
Type 1.....	72
Type 2.....	72
Cold Weather Precautions.....	169
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	191
Cornering Lamps.....	50
Cruise Control.....	41
Principle of Operation.....	144
Cruise control	
See: Using Cruise Control.....	144
Cup Holders.....	107
<b>D</b>	
Daytime Running Lamps.....	46
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	112
Regeneration.....	112
Digital Radio.....	244
General Information.....	244
Direction Indicators.....	50
DPF	
See: Diesel Particulate Filter.....	112
Driver Airbag.....	24
Driver Alert.....	151
Principle of Operation.....	151
Using Driver Alert.....	151
Driver Knee Airbag.....	25
Driving Aids.....	150
Driving Hints.....	169
Driving Through Water.....	169
DRL	
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	46
<b>E</b>	
Eco Mode.....	159
Resetting Eco Mode.....	159
Type 1.....	159
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	257

# Index

End User License Agreement.....	258
SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA).....	258
Engine Coolant Check.....	191
Adding Engine Coolant.....	191
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	38
Engine Oil Check.....	190
Adding Oil.....	191
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	190
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	190
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	190
Essential Towing Checks.....	165
Before Towing a Trailer.....	166
Hitches.....	165
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC).....	166
Safety Chains.....	165
Trailer Brakes.....	165
Trailer Lamps.....	165
When Towing a Trailer.....	166
Exterior Mirrors.....	55
Blind Spot Monitor.....	57
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	56
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	56
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors.....	57
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	55

## F

Fastening the Seatbelts.....	21
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	21
First Aid Kit.....	171
Floor Mats.....	169
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	48
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	49
Folding Tray.....	107
Four-Wheel Drive.....	127
Principle of Operation.....	127
Front Fog Lamps.....	48
Fuel and Refueling.....	116
Fuel Burning Heater	
See: Auxiliary Heater.....	93

Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	117
Diesel-Winter Driving.....	118
Long-Term Storage.....	117
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	117
Long-Term Storage.....	117
Fuel Shutoff.....	171
Fuse Box Locations.....	174
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	174
Luggage Compartment Fuse Box.....	175
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	174
Pre-Fuse Box.....	174
Fuses.....	174
Fuse Specification Chart.....	175
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	175
Luggage Compartment Fuse Box.....	181
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	179

## G

Gauges.....	60
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	61
Fuel Gauge.....	61
Information Display.....	60
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	27
Global Opening and Closing.....	54
Global Closing.....	55
Global Opening.....	54

## H

Handbrake	
See: Parking Brake.....	133
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	171
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	46
Headlamp Leveling.....	49
Recommended Headlamp Leveling Switch Positions.....	49
Headlamp Removal	
See: Removing a Headlamp.....	193
Head Restraints.....	99
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	99
Heated Seats.....	104
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	93
Heated Exterior Mirror.....	93
Heated Rear Window.....	93
Heated Windshield.....	93



# Index

Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	85
Hill Start Assist.....	125
Switching the System On and Off.....	126
Using Hill Start Assist.....	126
Hints on Controlling the Interior	
Climate.....	90
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....	91
General Hints.....	90
Heating the Interior Quickly.....	90
Maximum Cooling Performance in	
Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel	
and Footwell Positions.....	93
Recommended Settings for Cooling .....	91
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	91
Side Window Defogging in Cold	
Weather.....	92
Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods	
During Extreme High Ambient	
Temperatures.....	92
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock	
Brakes.....	132
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	185
<b>I</b>	
Ignition Switch.....	108
Information Display Control.....	41
Multimedia Controls.....	41
Information Displays.....	66
General Information.....	66
Information Messages.....	72
Active City Stop.....	73
Airbag.....	73
Alarm.....	73
Automatic High Beam Control.....	74
Battery and Charging System.....	74
Blind Spot Monitor and Cross Traffic Alert	
System.....	74
Child Power Lock.....	75
Climate Control.....	75
Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control	
(ACC).....	76
Doors.....	76
Driver Alert.....	76
Engine.....	77
Hill Start Assist.....	78
Keyless Vehicle.....	78
Lane Keeping Aid.....	79
Lighting.....	79
Maintenance.....	80
Message Indicator.....	73
Occupant Protection.....	80
Parking Aid.....	80
Parking Brake.....	81
Power Steering.....	81
Starting System .....	82
Start-Stop.....	82
Towing.....	83
Traction Control.....	84
Transmission and Four-Wheel Drive.....	83
Installing Child Restraints.....	16
Instrument Cluster.....	60
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	46
Interior Lamps.....	51
Front Interior Lamp .....	51
Rear Interior Lamp.....	51
Interior Mirror.....	58
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	58
Introduction.....	5
<b>J</b>	
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	172
To Connect the Booster Cables.....	172
To Start the Engine.....	173

# Index

## K

Keyless Entry.....	35
Disabled keys.....	37
General information.....	35
Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade.....	37
Locking the vehicle.....	35
Passive key.....	35
Unlocking the vehicle.....	36
Keyless Starting.....	108
Failure to Start.....	109
Fast Restart.....	110
Starting Your Vehicle.....	109
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	110
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	110
Switching the Ignition On (Accessory Mode).....	109
Keys and Remote Controls.....	27

## L

Lane Keeping System.....	152
Lane Keeping Aid.....	154
Lane Keeping Alert.....	152
Lighting Control.....	45
Headlamp Flasher.....	46
High Beams.....	45
Lighting.....	45
General Information.....	45
Load Carriers.....	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	162
Load Carrying.....	160
General Information.....	160
Locking and Unlocking.....	30
Locking and Unlocking the Doors from Inside.....	31
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key.....	31
Locking the Doors Individually with the Key .....	31
Power Door Locks.....	30
Power Liftgate.....	31
Remote Control.....	30
Locks.....	30

Luggage Anchor Points.....	160
Luggage Retention Nets.....	160
Luggage Covers.....	161
Lug Nuts.....	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	205

## M

Maintenance.....	185
General Information.....	185
Manual Climate Control.....	87
Manual Liftgate.....	32
Closing the Liftgate.....	32
Opening the Liftgate.....	32
Manual Seats.....	100
Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat.....	100
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	100
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	100
Recline Adjustment.....	101
Manual Transmission.....	122
Selecting Reverse Gear.....	122
Message Center.....	
See: Information Displays.....	66
Mirrors.....	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	93
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	53
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	8
Moonroof.....	58
Bounce-Back.....	59
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	59
Opening and Closing the Sunscreen.....	59
Venting the Moonroof.....	59

## N

Navigation.....	248
Hazard Spot Warning.....	256
Information.....	253
Loading Map Data.....	248
Menu Structure.....	249
Navigation Map Updates.....	256
Road Safety.....	248
Route Options.....	251
Setting a Route.....	249
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....	253
Type Approvals.....	256

# Index

## O

Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	190
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	185
Closing the Hood.....	186
Opening the Hood.....	185
Overhead Console.....	107

## P

Parking Aid.....	137
Parking Aids.....	136
Principle of Operation.....	136
Parking Brake.....	133
Passenger Airbag.....	25
.....	25
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	38
Arming the Engine Immobilizer.....	38
Coded Keys.....	38
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer.....	38
Principle of Operation.....	38
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	38
Personalized Settings.....	72
Measure Units.....	72
Switching Chimes Off.....	72
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	30
Power Liftgate.....	33
Closing the Liftgate.....	34
Hands-Free Feature.....	34
Programming the Liftgate.....	34
Power Seats.....	101
10-Way.....	102
Power Lumbar.....	103
Power Windows.....	53
Accessory Delay.....	54
Bounce-Back.....	53
One-Touch Down.....	53
One-Touch Up.....	53
Window Lock.....	53
Protecting Larger Children.....	18
Typical Booster Seat.....	19

## R

Rear Fog Lamps.....	49
---------------------	----

Rear Seat Armrest.....	104
Rear Seats.....	103
Folding the Seatback.....	103
Recline Adjustment.....	103
Unfolding the Seatback.....	103
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	160
Adjustable Load Floor.....	161
Cargo Management System.....	160
Passenger Compartment Floor.....	160
Rear View Camera.....	140
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	141
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	140
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	43
Rear Window Washer.....	44
Rear Window Wiper.....	43
Recommended Towing Weights.....	164
Refueling.....	119
Remote Control.....	27
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	27
Remote Control without a Folding Key	
Blade.....	28
Reprogramming the Unlocking	
Function.....	27
Removing a Headlamp.....	193
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	203
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	7
Collision Repairs.....	7
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical	
Repairs.....	7
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	8
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Control.....	29
Roadside Emergencies.....	171
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	162
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	169
Running Out of Fuel.....	118
Refilling with a Portable Fuel	
Container.....	118

## S

Safety Precautions.....	116
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....	22

# Index

Seatbelt Reminder.....	22
Rear Seatbelt Reminder.....	22
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off.....	23
Seatbelts.....	20
Principle of Operation.....	20
Seats.....	98
Security.....	38
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	16
.....	16
Side Airbags.....	25
Side Curtain Airbags.....	26
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	98
Snow Chains	
See: Using Snow Chains.....	204
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	144
Speed Limiter.....	150
Principle of Operation.....	150
Using the System.....	150
Stability Control.....	135
Principle of Operation.....	135
Starter Switch	
See: Ignition Switch.....	108
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	112
Cold or Hot Engine.....	112
Failure to Start.....	112
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	111
Cold or Hot Engine.....	111
Engine Idle Speed after Starting.....	111
Failure to Start.....	112
Flooded Engine.....	111
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	108
General Information.....	108
Steering Wheel Lock.....	110
Vehicles with Keyless Starting.....	111
Steering Wheel.....	39
Storage Compartments.....	107
Sunroof	
See: Moonroof.....	58
Sun Visors.....	58
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....	58
Supplementary Restraints System.....	24
Principle of Operation.....	24
Switching Off the Engine.....	113
Vehicles With a Turbocharger.....	113
Symbols Glossary.....	5

## T

Tailgate	
See: Manual Liftgate.....	32
See: Power Liftgate.....	33
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	213
Tire Care.....	204
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	204
Towing a Trailer.....	163
Ford standard duty towpack.....	163
Steep Gradients.....	163
Towing Points.....	167
Towing the Vehicle on Four	
Wheels.....	167
All Vehicles.....	167
Vehicles with Automatic	
Transmission.....	167
Towing.....	163
Traction Control.....	134
Principle of Operation.....	134
Trailer Sway Control.....	164
Transmission.....	122
Transmission	
See: Transmission.....	122
Trip Computer.....	72
All Value.....	72
Average Fuel.....	72
Digital Speedometer.....	72
Fuel Used.....	72
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	72
Trip Odometer.....	72

## U

Under Hood Overview - 1.5L	
EcoBoost™.....	189
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L	
Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	188
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	187
Unique Driving Characteristics.....	114
USB Port.....	246

# Index

Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	145
Automatic Braking.....	146
Automatic Switch Off.....	148
Changing the Set Speed.....	147
Detection Beam Issues.....	146
Forward Alert Function.....	149
Setting a Speed.....	147
Setting the Vehicle Gap.....	147
Standby Mode.....	148
Switching the System Off.....	148
Switching the System On.....	147
Using the System.....	147
Using Cruise Control.....	144
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	144
Switching Cruise Control On.....	144
Using Four-Wheel Drive.....	127
Driving in Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive.....	127
Using Snow Chains.....	204
Vehicles with Stability Control.....	205
Using Stability Control.....	135
Using Traction Control.....	134
Switching the System Off and On Using the Information Display Controls.....	134
Switching the System Off Using the Switch.....	134

## V

Vehicle Care.....	202
Vehicle Identification Number.....	214
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	213
Built Date.....	213
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	85
Vents	
See: Air Vents.....	85
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	214
Voice Control.....	41

## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	61
Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp.....	61
Automatic High Beam Lamp.....	61
Battery Warning Lamp.....	61
Blind Spot Monitor Indicator.....	62
Brake System Warning Lamp.....	62
Cruise Control Indicator.....	62
Direction Indicator.....	62
Engine Oil Warning Lamp.....	62
Engine Warning Lamps.....	62
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....	63
Front Airbag Warning Lamp.....	63
Front Fog Lamps Indicator.....	63
Frost warning lamp.....	63
Glow Plug Indicator.....	63
Headlamp and Parking Lamp Indicator.....	63
High Beam Indicator.....	63
Information Indicator.....	63
Lane Keeping System Indicator.....	63
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....	63
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator.....	63
Shift Indicator.....	64
Stability Control Off Indicator.....	64
Stability Control Warning Lamp.....	64
Start-Stop Indicator.....	64
Warning Triangle.....	171
Washer Fluid Check.....	192
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	202
See: Wipers and Washers.....	42
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	205
Wheels and Tires.....	204
General Information.....	204
Technical Specifications.....	212
Windows and Mirrors.....	53
Windshield Washers.....	43
Windshield Wipers.....	42
Intermittent Wipe.....	42
Speed dependent wipers (if equipped).....	42
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	192
Wipers and Washers.....	42



